

INTRODUCTION

AN

INTRODUCTION

TO

UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

A

INTRODUCTION

UNIVERSAL HISTORY

INTRODUCTION



UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

303 d 3

AN
INTRODUCTION
TO
UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

Translated from the Latin of Baron HOLBERG.

WITH
Notes Historical, Chronological, and Critical.

By GREGORY SHARPE, LL.D. *K*

Fellow of the Royal and Antiquarian Societies.

THE SECOND EDITION

Corrected and enlarged.

To which is prefixed

A short SYSTEM of GEOGRAPHY, with Maps, &c.

L O N D O N:

Printed for A. MILLAR in the Strand, J. WARD in
Cornhill, and A. LINDE in Catherine-Street.

MDCCLVIII.



TO
HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS,
G E O R G E,
P R I N C E of W A L E S.

THE FOLLOWING
I N T R O D U C T I O N
TO
U N I V E R S A L H I S T O R Y

Is most humbly Dedicated by
H I S R O Y A L H I G H N E S S,

Most obedient,

most devoted, and

most humble Servant,

GREGORY SHARPE,

A 3

HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS

GEORGE

PRINCE OF WALES

THE

INTRODUCTION

UNIVERSAL HISTORY

HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS

GEORGE



THE
P R E F A C E
TO THE
R E A D E R.

HAVING been ever inclined to promote the study of history, as being of all studies, the most useful to mankind, I had no sooner read the following treatise of Baron Holberg's, than I found myself strongly tempted, by the superior excellency of it, to translate it into English; with the addition of such notes as should appear to me necessary for the rendering it more complete, exact, and useful *. There

* The character given of this book by the author of *Hubnerus Enucleatus*, another short introduction to *Universal History* published in 1755, deserves our notice, it contains, says he, many things that you may in vain look for,

There is indeed a very good abridgment by Dr. Howell, published both in Latin and in English; but it includes only the four great monarchies, and descends no lower than to the reign of Constantine the Great; nor did he himself seem to be thoroughly satisfied with the disposition and order of his topics: Though his larger history is indeed an excellent performance. The Introduction to Universal History, inscribed to the Dauphin of France by the celebrated bishop of Meaux, is rather an elegant composition than a useful history*.

And though many performances of the same nature have also been pub-

Frustra quæfiveris, in this epitome of Hubner, especially in what relates to chronology and the state of letters; he therefore recommends Holberg to be read with Hubner, equidem auctor sim Hubnerum hunc lecturis enucleatum ut Holbergianam synopsis conjungant, &c.

* It is plain that Bossuet intended this book as a recapitulation of what the Dauphin had read more at large, and with this view it is a very good performance, though not so proper for a mere beginner.

lished

P R E F A C E.

ix

lished at home and abroad, by Hearne, Pareus, and others, this deserves the preference, as well because it includes all history from the creation to the present time, as for the ease and perspicuity of the clue that leads the reader through the several labyrinths of empires, dynasties, kingdoms, states, their origin, declension, revolutions and destruction.

A brief account is herein delivered of the rise and progress of almost every empire, kingdom, or republic in the world; shewing how they arose from the ashes of one another. And as the author had a thorough knowledge of ecclesiastical history, his abridgment thereof is not the least valuable part of his book; for this is a subject, that has been either totally neglected, or very partially and very unfairly represented. And nothing can be of greater use and advantage, or conduce more to the security of a protestant kingdom, than the history of theological opinions. For it

will be in vain to call certain notions apostolical, if we know when and how they crept into the common Creed in after ages.

And in such a country as this, where every man of fortune has a chance, at least, of having the affairs of the world laid before him for his consideration, and even submitted to his suffrage in parliament, it is inexcusable to neglect the study of history.

Again; this abridgement contains not only an account of the political, ecclesiastical, and literary state of kingdoms and commonwealths, but gives also a short abstract of the Lives of the most famous men, which are as so many examples or patterns to their species; and example is known to influence more powerfully than precept.

I have often wondered, since the introduction of experiments into natural philosophy, and the establishment of it upon facts, that the same method

has

has not been pursued in matters of a moral kind. The conduct and tendency of the human passions, all the characters they form, and the consequences they produce, can never be so clearly illustrated and properly distinguished, the good so powerfully recommended, or the bad rendered so detestable, by abstracted reasoning, as by facts from the histories of men.

It is true, the title of Mr. Wanley's collection (a General History of Man, &c.) would seem to argue that the work I call for, is already performed: but I can by no means be persuaded to think that his Work and his Title agree; or that so crude a mass deserves the name of a history.

The Orientals, on the contrary, prefer this method of instruction to all others; and, when facts are wanting, substitute apposite and ingenious fictions in their room. I have a small manuscript in the Persian language by me, in which, after a very short discourse

course upon the attributes of God, is an account of the moral virtues, each illustrated by a story. And my learned friend Dr. Hunt, the professor of Hebrew and Arabic in Oxford, has a collection of the same kind, in Arabic, tending to illustrate the manners of the Eastern people.

But to resume the subject more immediately before me, whatever the following work has suffered by translation, I hope is compensated by the notes I have added to it; which, perhaps, may render it worthy the perusal of those, whose advanced knowledge and maturer judgments have left the rudiments of history far behind them.

An abridgment like this is, indeed, no more than an avenue to political knowledge, and consequently can be of no other use to such men, than to help the memory, quicken the recollection, and preserve a general connection, of facts in order of time; and so
much

much this may modestly pretend to : for the topics are in general well chosen, the method clear, the narration faithful, and I have endeavoured to make the chronology exact : so that if it is not a performance of the first class, neither is it one of those perishable trifles, that time sweeps away among the waste of things. And having mentioned my own endeavours to reform the chronology of my author, it is not only fit that I should acknowledge the great Sir Isaac Newton as my guide, but also, that I should go a little out of my way to shew why I have done so, seeing his authority in that branch of knowledge has been disputed *.

I adhere to his system then, as the best, because founded not upon large conjectural numbers, but upon astro-

* See Apologie du sentiment de Monsr. le Chevalier Newton sur l'ancienne chronologie des Grècs, contenant des réponses à toutes les objections qui y ont été faites jusqu'à présent, par Monsr. le Chevalier S.....t. 1757.

nomical

nomical observations, the genealogies of families, and the mean ratio of mens lives, as they succeed by generations, or in succession to one another by eldest sons, or otherwise. This great author asserts, " that Eratosthenes and Apollodorus, the old chronologers, the former of whom writ about 100 years after Alexander's death, have given 36 years and a half to a reign, which is as much again as the truth; for kings, at a moderate reckoning, reign but 18 or 20 years a piece, one with another. Generations from father to son may be reckoned at 33 or 34 years a piece, or about three generations to 100 years; but, if by eldest sons, three to 75, or 80 years, is the proper ratio, or proportion: Kings succeeded by eldest sons, brothers, persons of equal age, deposed, slain in war, &c. somewhat less. Against this some instances have been objected, in which the objector has taken care to pick out a few reigns,

reigns, beginning and ending with a king, who has lived to an uncommon great age: and that such instances might be produced no man would deny, but then they will never serve to establish a series of reigns, each of which included 30 years, and that in times when wars and depositions were more fatal to kings than in more modern times. It is true of other kings and kingdoms, what the reverend and learned Mr. Jackson has said of the Gothic Scythian kingdom, p. 346, Vol. 2. of his chronology. "If we
" reckon their reigns at 18 years,
" one with another, it is probably too
" much, most of the kings being slain
" in battle, or killed by their subjects,
" or deposed."

The nineteen kings of Israel, if you consider an interregnum of eleven years as one reign, and an anarchy of nine years as equal to another, on the whole reigned little more than twelve years a piece,

piece, and the twenty kings of Judea little more than nineteen years, one with another; which is one undeniable evidence of the truth of the Jewish history; for fictitious kings in fabulous relations, are always made to reign much longer. Concerning the fourteen kings who reigned at Alba, and the first seven kings of Rome, see the Preface to the last edition of Mr. Hooke's Roman History, in which it is proved, that Sir Isaac Newton is so far from having reduced chronology, to numbers that are too small, that in this case at least his numbers are too great.

As to what the old chronologers have done. . . . "It was not, says Sir Isaac, till after the death of Alexander the Great, that chronologers set down the generations, reigns, and successions in numbers of years; and then they put reigns and successions as equipollent to generations, and three genera-
tions

tions equal to 100, or 120 years, and this was the original of the technical chronology of the Greeks. And Plutarch, speaking of some chronological canons, observes, that hundreds of authors correcting have not yet been able to constitute any thing certain, in which they could agree among themselves about repugnancies."

Nor was Newton the first who reasoned concerning chronology from genealogies. Olaus Rudbeckius in his *Manheim*, or *Atlantica*, has made several observations, which, as they serve to confirm the system of our great chronologer, and the book is very scarce and in few hands, I shall translate and insert.—“Be events, says he never so ancient or memorable relating to kings or heroes, in this or that writer, they will find little credit, unless there be also recorded transactions with other nations; such as marriages, treaties, alliances, wars, or some other matters in common, that by comparing
a events,

events, some dates may be thereby discovered and ascertained. — If we can bring facts from other historians to the Bible, they mutually support each other.—Ancient writers not only neglected the years of each reign, but epochs. And therefore subsequent authors assigned arbitrarily such dates, as they thought proper, to the lives and reigns of kings. And then another evil arose, for they often assigned to several brothers too great a number of years, as if they had been in succession to one another, and so gave whole ages to one generation of men. Some also have considered tributary kings, though living under subjection to one sovereign at one time, as if they had been in a long train of succession to one another, and have assigned them their times in proportion to their number, making the age of the world some thousand years older than the truth. Some to correct the errors of other
other

other chronologers, have, in Egyptian history, taken kings from one dynasty and added them to another. — But I, solicitous to discover the true way, have determined first to enumerate the genealogies or families of certain kings and heroes, particularly those to whose lives and reigns no chronological calculations have been as yet adapted: for such I think must needs be most free from corruptions, as having never been practised upon by others to establish a foundation for conjectural chronology. And then to consider the connections that kings of different nations must have with each other, by intermarriages, wars, and treaties.”

But then, nor Rudbeck, nor any other author before Sir Isaac Newton, ever made the necessary distinction between generations and reigns, or successions, or ever assigned the proper numbers, on a medium, for the natural

duration of each of them : and as these numbers are taken from the general course of nature, his *Chronology* may be said to stand upon as firm a basis as his *Principia*.

And now it may not be improper, before I conclude, to observe, for the sake of those who are strangers to the character of Baron Holberg, author of this Abridgment of Universal History; that he was a learned and ingenious man; a Dane by birth; the author of many works, in prose and verse; but almost all of them in the Danish language: that he wrote 25 plays; a metamorphosis, the reverse of Ovid's, relating the change of flowers, trees, and animals, into men: that he was the author of several satires in verse; of the entertaining voyage under ground, of *Klimius*, in Latin called *iter subterraneum*; of some epigrams; of his own life; of an excellent ecclesiastical

fiastical history ; another of the Danes, and one of the Jews ; with several moral, historical, and other pieces : and that he was always infirm and studious, had travelled much, and loved and imitated the manners of the English.





TO THE
READER,

Concerning this

SECOND EDITION.

THIS translation was principally undertaken with a view to the service of religion, by removing some trite and impertinent objections to several parts of the Old Testament, and by setting the argument for Christianity, drawn from History, in a proper light; which purposes the Introduction to Universal History, by Baron Holberg, seemed to serve better than any

any other, as his abridgment of Sacred and of Church History was very just and impartial.

It was the cry of a faction formerly, That the church was in danger: it is, at present, the cry of all good men, That religion itself is in danger; and every prop of every kind is therefore more than ever necessary at present to keep it from sinking.

Besides, it afforded a favourable opportunity of vindicating and applying Sir Isaac Newton's Chronology to History, and of doing justice to the characters of some great men who were friends to the liberties of mankind.

In its present form the Book may be of good use in the education of young gentlemen, as it contains the elements of geography, universal history, and chronology.

The short system of geography prefixed is a translation from Holberg, in which the same freedom is used with him, as he took with Jacobæus, who was the author of this geographical compendium. *Quæ desiderantur supplevi, reliqua integra et intacta relinquens.* The maps are as complete as could well be made upon so small a scale, and are large enough for so short an introduction as this is to geography.

The questions in the former edition of the introduction to universal history, as they were of no real use, and too often interrupted the reader, are now entirely omitted, and several of the notes inserted into the text, but kept distinct from it by inverted comma's, that the reader may not blame Holberg for any errors but his own.

The abridgment of the English history, which was very defective, is considerably enlarged, and chronological dates are added to the margin of almost every page, shewing the centuries before and after Christ. Thus in p. 31. XI. a. c. is found in the margin, which signifies that Saul reigned in the eleventh century before Christ, or *ante Christum*, denoted by a. C. The line over XI. a. c. denotes that this century occurs here for the first time, or, at least, that it occurs first in that particular period of history. But in the two following pages, 32, 33, XI. a. C. has no line over it, to signify that it had been mentioned before. Sometimes the particular years of remarkable events are added as in page 33, where (An. 1012) denotes the year of the finishing of the temple, and (An. 975) the year of the defection of the ten tribes.

The centuries after Christ are marked 1st Cent.
11d Cent. 1vth Cent. &c. See p. 87, &c.

That I may not deprive another Gentle-
man of the merit of his services, nor myself
of the honour of being served by him, he will
forgive me if I acquaint the public, that the
marginal dates and some important corrections
are owing to the friendly assistance of George
Lewis Scot, Esq;



THE

[4]

THE
A U T H O R's
P R E F A C E.

I WAS sensible, when I undertook to write an Abridgment of Universal History, that it would be extremely difficult to contrive a method of throwing it into one connected view. To free myself from this difficulty I had recourse to what others had done before me, and saw, that most authors, too anxious to preserve order of time, confounded every thing but chronology, and nothing more than

THE AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

than the memory of their readers: not to follow these men into such a troubled ocean, in which I might expect to be shipwrecked for my folly, I determined to steer another course that I might convey some part of the goods I had got in my voyage safe into port. In this conflict with my own thoughts, I judged it most convenient to describe history under four great empires, and after the fourth or last monarchy to treat particularly of the kingdoms that started up out of their ruins, by which means the whole work is wrought up together like the history of one nation: for it is a known maxim, that the destruction of one empire is the rise of another. And then to assist the memory* of young persons, I have thought it best to use the method of question and answer, to divide history into certain periods, and at the close of every such period to give a sketch of the political, ecclesiastical, and literary State of things, that sacred and prophane, political and literary matters might not be confounded with one another. I own that in this way many

* The author of *Hubnerus emuleatus* very justly observes that the answers are too long for dialogue, *plereque responsiones sunt longiores quam ut colloquiorum vicem sustinere possint.*

things

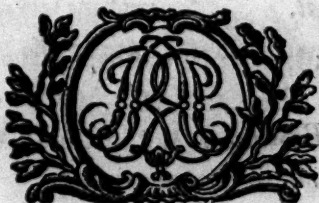
THE AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

things will be omitted ; but then, as I had obliged myself to contract universal history within as small a compass as possible, I thought it better to omit what was least necessary, than to set forth a barren list of names and numbers, as is commonly the case when all history is to be comprized within a few pages. Perhaps on the other hand, I shall be censured for having inserted some things less curious in this Abridgment. But, since, by the last royal order professors are required to examine their students a second and a third time in history, they may confine them, on the first examination, to the series of emperors and kings, which, as most useful, are printed in a larger character *; but then the candidate against a second or third examination should be further instructed. I may add that historical abridgments should be contrived in such manner as to convince the young student of the excellence of this study, and to leave a relish for it on the reader's mind. And as in this state of the case an abstract of geography will be necessary, I will endeavour either to compose a new one, or to publish another edition, with

* This distinction of character is omitted as unnecessary.
ad-

THE AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

additions, of that now in use, written by the celebrated Jacobæus. For, since my infirm state of health will not permit me to attend disputations, I am the more inclined to write, that I may, if I am not thought to have already done it, in this way atone for that neglect.



CON-

THE
CONTENTS.

<i>A</i> SHORT System of Geography.	page 1
The mathematical description of the Earth.	2
A physical description of the Earth.	4
The political description of the Earth.	7
Of Europe and its several kingdoms.	ibid.
Of Spain.	8
Of Portugal.	9
Of France.	ibid.
Of Italy.	11
Of Great Britain.	14
Of Denmark.	15
Of Norway.	17
Of Sweden.	18
The Low Countries.	20
Of Germany.	21
Of Bohemia and Hungary.	25
Of Switzerland.	ibid.
Of Poland.	26
Of Moscovy.	27
Of Thrace.	28
Of	

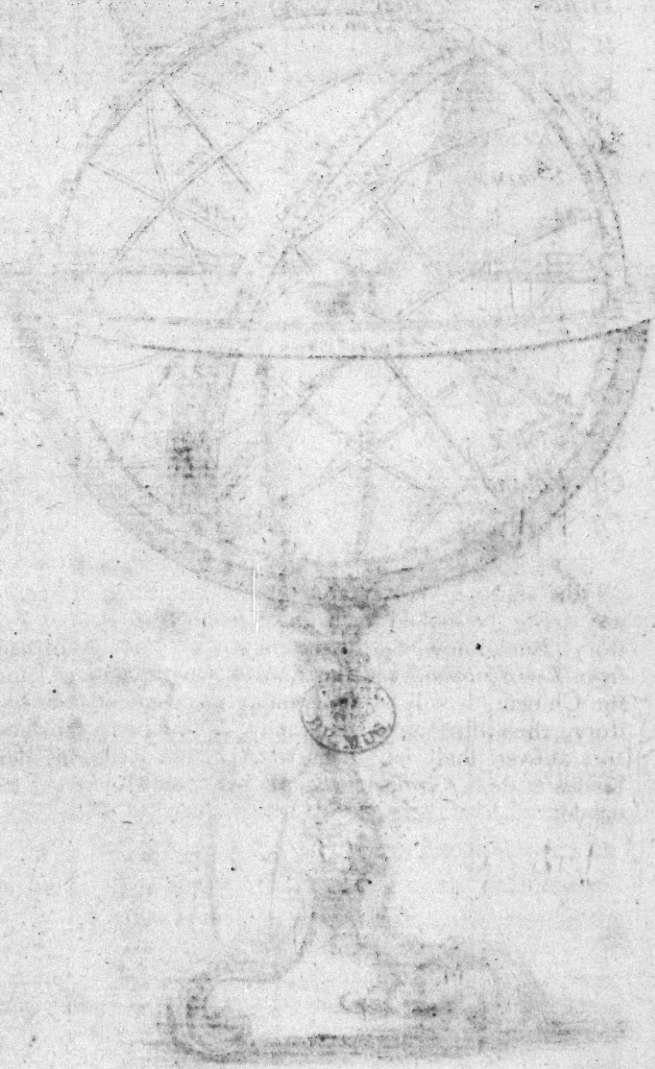
CONTENTS.

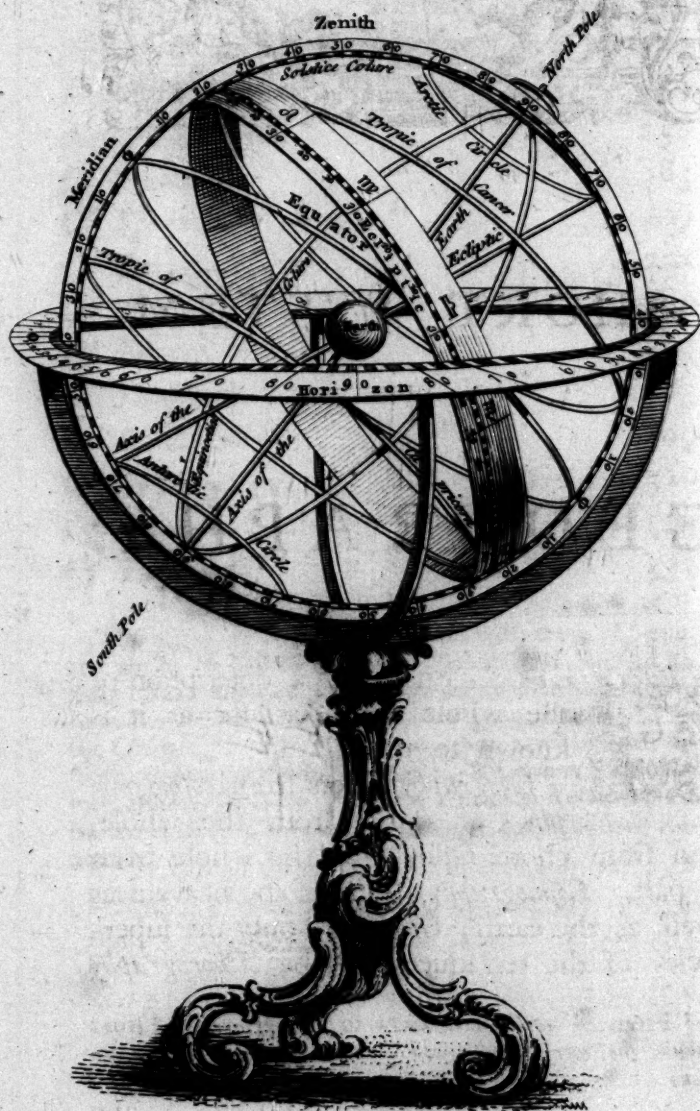
<i>Of Moesia.</i>	page 29
<i>Of Transylvania.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of Greece.</i>	30
<i>Of Asia.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of China.</i>	31
<i>Of India.</i>	32
<i>Of Persia.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of Africa.</i>	39
<i>Of America.</i>	41
<i>Islands in the West-Indies.</i>	42
<i>Arctic lands.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of history in general.</i>	45
<i>Of ancient sacred history.</i>	55
<i>Second period of ancient sacred history.</i>	60
<i>Third period.</i>	65
<i>Fourth period.</i>	68
<i>Fifth period.</i>	75
<i>Sixth period.</i>	78
<i>Seventh period of the Herodian family.</i>	82
<i>History of the four monarchies.</i>	85
<i>Of the Assyrian, or first monarchy.</i>	86
<i>Of the Grecian or third monarchy.</i>	100
<i>Of Ægypt and Phœnicia.</i>	89
<i>Of the Persian, or second monarchy.</i>	94
<i>Of</i>	

C O N T E N T S.

<i>Introduction to the fourth, or Roman monarchy.</i>	page III
<i>History of the fourth monarchy.</i>	122
<i>Western emperors.</i>	156
<i>Eastern emperors.</i>	158
<i>Of Germany.</i>	185
<i>Of Spain.</i>	207
<i>Of Portugal.</i>	221
<i>Of Britain.</i>	229
<i>Of France.</i>	261
<i>Of Denmark.</i>	283
<i>Of Sweden.</i>	309
<i>Of Moscovy.</i>	320
<i>Of Poland.</i>	324
<i>Of Turkey.</i>	332

The affairs of Africa are blended with those of Spain, and are to be looked for in the Spanish and Roman history. But a knowledge of the country will be best learned from *Leo Africanus*, and the *Nubian* geographer. As for the Chinese, it will be time enough to consider their history, their astronomy, geography, &c. when a satisfactory answer shall be given to *Ancienés Relations des Landes et de la Chine avec remarque*, par Monsieur Renaudot.





T. Kitchen Sculp.



A

SHORT SYSTEM

OF

GEOGRAPHY.



GEOGRAPHY ¹ is a description of the whole earth as far as it is known to us.

Geography differs from *cosmography* ² as a part from the whole, and from *chorography* ³, as the whole from a part. *Cosmography* describes the heavens as well as the earth; *Geography* only the superficies of the terraqueous Globe; *Chorography*

¹ From *γη* earth, and *γραφω* to describe.
κοσμος the world, and *γραφω*.

² from

³ from *χωρος* a re-

gion.

B

any

any particular region, and topography ⁴ any particular place, land, territory, town or village.

The description of the terraqueous Globe is usually considered as mathematical, physical or political.

The *mathematical* description of the Earth.

The artificial Globe properly belongs to this division; it is suspended by the two poles, the one on the north point of the Orb is called *arctic* ⁵, the other directly opposite to it *antarctic* ⁶, and named poles from the Greek verb, *πολεω* to *turn*, because upon them the whole frame of the Earth turns round.

On the terraqueous Globe are described eight principal circles, four great, and four less.

The great circles are the *Æquator*, *Horizon*, *Zodiac* and *Meridian*, which divide the Globe into two equal parts. The *æquator*, commonly called the *Æquinoctial line*, divides the Globe into two parts, north and south, at an equal distance from each pole. The *Horizon* or *determinator* separates the visible from the invisible part of the Globe,

⁴ From *τοπος* a place. ⁵ from *αρκτος* a bear, because the real north pole in the heavens is distinguished by a star in the constellation called the little bear.
⁶ from *αντι* contrary to.

and takes the lower *Hemisphere* away. The *Zodiac* is an oblique circle passing through the middle of the *Æquator*. It is divided into twelve parts, which are called *Signs*. These signs being for the most part representations of animals, the name of the circle is taken from the Greek word ζῳον which signifies *animal*. This circle is divided by another concentric circle called the *Ecliptic*, making an angle with the æquinoctial of 23 degrees 30 minutes, which is the sun's greatest declination, in the points of Aries and Libra.

The *Meridian* passing through the two Poles divides the terraqueous Globe into two equal parts, and takes its name from *meridies* or *medius dies*, because when the sun comes to the meridian of a place it is then *mid-day* in that place.

The lesser circles are, the *Tropics of Cancer* and *Capricorn*, which touch the ecliptic in the opposite points of Cancer and Capricorn, which are therefore called *Solstitial* points: the *arctic* and *antarctic* poles, and these four lesser circles divide the face or superficies of the whole earth into five spaces or climates called *Zones*.

The zones are, 1. *Torrid*, including the space between the two *Tropics*, and is so called because of the great and continual heat of the sun, under whose course it lies. This zone comprehends *Guinea*, *lower Lybia*, *Æthiopia*, part of *Arabia* and of the *East Indies*,

A SHORT SYSTEM

as also the *West Indies*. 2. The *temperate Zone*, which is either south or north, and includes those parts of the Globe which are greatly improved on account of the temperature of the air. 3. The *frigid Zone*, is also north or south, and comprehends such lands as are desert and uncultivated on account of excessive cold.

Each circle, as well as the whole Globe, is by Geometricians divided into three hundred and sixty parts, called *degrees*: Each degree into sixty, called *scruples* or *minutes*, answering to so many Italian miles: So that as four Italian miles make one German mile, fifteen German miles are equal to a degree. This may suffice for the mathematical division of the Globe, and he that would know more must have recourse to the Professors of Geometry.

A *physical* description of the Earth.

The next description of the Earth is called *physical* or *natural*, according to which the Globe is divided into land and water.

Waters are either confined within banks or encompass the Earth.

Waters which wash their banks are springs, streams, rivers, lakes.

Springs rise from the earth, and form streams, several of which meeting together make rivers.

A lake

OF GEOGRAPHY.

5

A lake is a collection of waters surrounded with land: if no stream flows in or out it is called a pool.

Waters encompassing the earth are called the sea or ocean, which is again divided in many different seas and gulphs.

The four seas or greater parts of the ocean are, 1. The Atlantic, which flows between *Africa* and *America*. 2. The Pacific, contained between *America*, and *Asia*. 3. The Northern, about the north pole. 4. The South-sea upon the south coast, which is known.

These great seas have other names given them from the several regions and shores they wash. Hence so many lesser seas the Atlantic, Gallic, British, Baltic, Mediterranean, &c.

Whenever the sea extends itself like an arm, within land, having no passage, it is called a Gulph. The principal of which are, the *Arabian*, *Persian*, *Bothnian*, *Adriatic*, &c.

Whenever it flows between two shores at no great distance from each other, it forms a strait or *fretum*, a *fervendo*. The most noted straits are those of Gibraltar, the Sound near Copenhagen, the straits of Magellan, and the Hellespont.

The land is divided into *continent*, *islands* and *peninsulas*.

A SHORT SYSTEM

The *continent* is a large tract of land not surrounded by the ocean, though in part washed by it.

An *Island* is separated from the continent and surrounded by the sea. It is called *Insula*, from *salum* the sea, because surrounded by it.

A *Peninsula* or *Chersonesus* is almost surrounded by the sea, being by some small part or neck of land joined to the continent, and therefore called a peninsula from *pene insula*, as being almost an island.

An *Isthmus* is a narrow tract or neck of land which joins a peninsula to the continent or any larger island.

The earth with respect to its uneven surface is divided into *mountains*, *promontories*, *vallies* and *plains*.

A *Mountain* is that part of the earth which is lifted high above the *vallies* and *plains*. Some mountains vomit forth fire, as *Ætna* in Sicily, *Vesuvius* in *Campania* within seven miles of Naples, and *Hecla* in Iceland.

A *Promontory*, *mons prominens*, is a high land stretching itself out into the sea;

The most remarkable promontory is the cape of Good-Hope at the most southern point of Africa.

The

The following is a list of the names of the persons who have been admitted to the membership of the Society since the last meeting.

Name	Residence	Profession	Date of Admission
John A. Smith	New York	Teacher	Jan. 1, 1847
Mary E. Jones	Boston	Widow	Feb. 1, 1847
William B. Allen	New York	Merchant	Mar. 1, 1847
Elizabeth C. Davis	New York	Teacher	Apr. 1, 1847
James H. Miller	New York	Teacher	May 1, 1847
Sarah A. Brown	New York	Widow	Jun. 1, 1847
John C. White	New York	Teacher	Jul. 1, 1847
Mary F. Green	New York	Widow	Aug. 1, 1847
William D. Black	New York	Teacher	Sep. 1, 1847
Elizabeth G. Clark	New York	Widow	Oct. 1, 1847
James K. Lewis	New York	Teacher	Nov. 1, 1847
Sarah L. Hall	New York	Widow	Dec. 1, 1847
John M. Young	New York	Teacher	Jan. 1, 1848
Mary N. King	New York	Widow	Feb. 1, 1848
William O. Wright	New York	Teacher	Mar. 1, 1848
Elizabeth P. Scott	New York	Widow	Apr. 1, 1848
John Q. Adams	New York	Teacher	May 1, 1848
Mary R. Baker	New York	Widow	Jun. 1, 1848
William S. Carter	New York	Teacher	Jul. 1, 1848
Elizabeth T. Evans	New York	Widow	Aug. 1, 1848
James U. Foster	New York	Teacher	Sep. 1, 1848
Sarah V. Green	New York	Widow	Oct. 1, 1848
John W. Hall	New York	Teacher	Nov. 1, 1848
Mary X. King	New York	Widow	Dec. 1, 1848
William Y. Wright	New York	Teacher	Jan. 1, 1849
Elizabeth Z. Scott	New York	Widow	Feb. 1, 1849
John A. Adams	New York	Teacher	Mar. 1, 1849
Mary B. Baker	New York	Widow	Apr. 1, 1849
William C. Carter	New York	Teacher	May 1, 1849
Elizabeth D. Evans	New York	Widow	Jun. 1, 1849
James E. Foster	New York	Teacher	Jul. 1, 1849
Sarah F. Green	New York	Widow	Aug. 1, 1849



The *political* description of the Earth.

It is called political, because the earth is divided into various empires, kingdoms and principalities. The most general division of the earth, in this respect, is into known and unknown parts.

The unknown comprehends the regions near the poles, which are supposed to be uninhabited on account of excessive cold.

The habitable part of the Globe is by Geographers divided into *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa* and *America*.

Of EUROPE and its several kingdoms.

Europe now more famous than any other part of the Globe, is bounded on the east by a river of *Tartary* in Europe called *Tanais*, or *Don*, on the south by the *Mediterranean sea*, on the north by the northern, and on the west by the Atlantic ocean. The figure it makes is like a woman sitting, whose head is *Spain*, neck and breast *France*, arms *Italy* and *Britain*, her belly *Germany*, and the rest of her body other regions.

The chief kingdoms in Europe are *Spain*, *Portugal*, *France*, *Italy*, *Great Britain*, *Denmark*, *Norway*, *Sweden*, *Germany*, *Bohemia*, *Poland*, *Hungary*, *Sclavonia*, *Croatia*, *Dalmatia*, *Bosnia*, *Servia*, *Bulgaria*, *Tartary* the less, *Moscovy*, *Greece*, to which we add such

republics as are not inferior to some kingdoms, as Venice, the United Provinces of the Netherlands, and the Swiss Cantons.

SPAIN.

Formerly called *Iberia*, is bounded on the east by the Pyrenean mountains and part of the Mediterranean sea; on the west by Portugal; on the south by the Mediterranean, and on the north by the bay of Biscay. The ancient division of Spain was into *Bætica*, *Lusitania* and *Tarracona*: The modern is into various states and kingdoms. The metropolis of Spain is Madrid, ennobled by the residence of its kings. The rest of the most famous cities are *Barcelona*, *Cæsar-augusta* or *Saragossa*, *Pompejopolis* or *Pampeluna*, *Valentia*, *Murcia*, *New Carthage* or *Cartagena*, the best harbour in Spain; *Granada*, which was reckoned one of the largest cities in Europe when under subjection to the Moors; *Seville*, formerly *Hispalis*, whence the whole kingdom called *Hispania* or Spain, the greatest city for commerce in Spain; *Cor-duba* a very large city, and the old seat of the Saracen kings; *Toledo* the center of Spain; *Valladolid* esteemed one of the neatest cities in Europe; *Compostella* or *S. Jago*, to which holy pilgrimages used to be made on account of St. James's bones, believed to be preserved there; and *Burgos*, the capital of old Castile.

The

OF GEOGRAPHY.

9

The most celebrated universities are those of *Salamanca* and *Complutum*, or *Alcala de Henares*.

The more noble rivers are the *Ebro*, *Batis* or *Guadalquivir*, *Anas* or *Guadiana*, *Tagus*, *Douro*, *Minus*, *Xucar*.

The most noted islands near Spain are the two *Baleares*, *Majorca* and *Minorca*, *Ebusus* or *Ivica*, and *Cadiz*.

PORTUGAL.

Anciently *Lusitania*, has Spain on the east and the Atlantic ocean on the west. It is divided into *Portugal*, properly so called, and *Algarve*.

Lisbon is the capital of the kingdom, a very great and famous emporium. *Setubal*, or, as it is commonly called, *St. Ubes*, is one of its best ports, famous for the number of merchants which come there every year from all parts of Europe to buy salt.

The universities of this kingdom are at *Lisbon* and *Coimbra*.

FRANCE.

Gaul was anciently divided into *Gallia*, *Cisalpina* and *Transalpina*, and from the dress of the inhabitants, into *Togata* or those who wore long garments, and *Braccata et Comata*, or who wore breeches and their hair. It has for boundaries, to the east, Germany, Switzerland

A SHORT SYSTEM

land and Savoy; to the west, the Bay of Biscay; to the north, the British channel, and to the south, the Mediterranean sea and Pyrenæan mountains.

It is at this time divided into twelve general provinces.

The most famous cities are *Paris*, the capital of the kingdom, a city, which for greatness and number of inhabitants, may well be called an epitome of the world. *Rouen*, a most opulent trading city near the English channel; *Rennes* and *Nantes*; *Rheims*, the seat of an archbishop, who anoints the Kings of France with the holy oil. *Dijon*, formerly the residence of the dukes of Burgundy; *Poitiers*, next to Paris in size; *Rochelle*, a well fortified city, once the bulwark of the Protestants; *Bordeaux*, a large city, and one of the most noted for trade in France, famous for Roman antiquities and ruins. *Toulouse*; *Narbonne*; *Montpelier* inhabited by physicians; *Nismes*, once a Roman colony, and therefore abounding with Roman antiquities and ruins. *Marseilles*, a city famous for trade, where the royal galleys are stationed. *Toulon*, the harbour for the kings fleet in the Mediterranean. *Gratianopolis* or *Grenoble*, so called from the emperor *Gratian*. *Lyons*, a large and fine city. *Orleans* and many more.

The most celebrated universities are at Paris, the real seat of the Muses; *Orleans*; *Mont-*

OF GEOGRAPHY.

11

Montpelier, famous for the study of physic; *Bordeaux*; *Tboulouse*, &c.

The most noted rivers in France are the *Rhone*, *Garonne*, *Meuse*, *Seine*, *Loire*, *Saone*, *Marne*, *Scheld* or *Escaut*.

ITALY.

Is said to resemble a boot; it advances into the Mediterranean sea, and has France on the west and Germany to the north.

It is at this day divided into kingdoms, principalities, republics and several islands.

There is but one kingdom, that of *Naples*, on the Continent of Italy, which formerly was in subjection to Spain, but is now governed by a King of its own of Spanish extraction. The metropolis of this kingdom is *Naples*, the seat of its kings, and, for magnificence of buildings and number of inhabitants, inferior to few of the most famous cities.

Tuscany, *Savoy*, and *Milan* are the principal dukedoms.

Tuscany, distinguished by the name of the Grand Dutchy, has *Florence* for its capital, the seat of the great dukes, and is reckoned one of the most beautiful cities in Europe. All the great dutchy is subject to the prince of *Lorraine*, Francis Stephen, the present emperor of Germany.

Savoy,

A SHORT SYSTEM

Savoy, which together with *Piedmont* is under the dominion of the duke of *Savoy*, the principal cities are *Chambery* and *Turin*, the capitals of *Savoy* and *Piedmont*.

The dutchy of *Milan*, whose metropolis is *Milan*, a city, which, for its extent, strength and number of inhabitants, is very respectable. Formerly it was governed by its own dukes, afterwards it was subject to the Spaniards, and now it is under the dominion of the emperor of Germany.

The most considerable republics in Italy are, *Venice*, *Genoa* and *Lucca*.

The *Venetian republic*, whose chief city is *Venice*, built on certain islands in the Adriatic sea, has a duke of its own, called the *Doge*, who is elected by the senate. The power of this city was once so great as to be envied by all Italy; and at this time may in some sort be reckoned amongst the wonders of the world for the beauty of its buildings, the opulence of its inhabitants and well contrived form of government.

The capital of the *Genoese republic* is *Genoa*, a city inferior to few others in the world for the magnificence of its edifices. It is therefore called by the Italians, who are wont to give epithets to cities, *Genoa* the proud, as *Venice* is by them called rich, *Florence* fair, and *Rome* holy, &c.

Lucca is also a free city, but within the territories of the emperor. Not far from
this

this place is hewn out in great plenty the most valuable marble in all Italy.

The islands of greatest consequence near Italy are *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corfica* and *Malta*.

Sicily is situate in the Mediterranean sea, and once was joined to Italy, but afterwards separated by the influx of the Sicilian sea. If we credit what authors have written, this was formerly called *Sicania* and *Trinacria*. The capital of old was *Syracuse*, at present *Palermo*. *Sicily* is famous for the burning mount *Ætna* and three promontories, *Pachynus*, *Lilybæum*, and *Pelorus*, whence the island was called *Triquetra*. It is separated from Italy by a narrow strait, which dire and uncertain passages is well known by the tremendous names of *Scylla* and *charybdis*.

Sardinia, is the second largest island in the Mediterranean, formerly, on account of its fertility distinguished as a kind nurse to Rome; but as it is fruitful, it is also pestilential, and the soil is more beneficent than the sky. The chief city is *Caralis* or *Cagliari*, which has a noble port. *Sardinia* now belongs to the duke of Savoy, who takes his title from thence. *Corfica* is less than *Sardinia* and not so fruitful. There have been cruel contests between the inhabitants of *Pisa* and the *Genoese* for the dominion of this island, which is now in the possession of the latter: the metropolis is *Bastia*.

Malta,

A SHORT SYSTEM

Malta, though it lies near Africa is generally reckoned among the islands of Italy. It is governed by the knights of the order of St. John, whose chief is grand master of the order. *Valetta* is the place where he resides, and it is extremely well fortified.

The most famous universities in Italy are those of *Bononia* and *Pisa*. The rivers are the Po and the *Tiber*; the mountains are the Alps, the Apennine, and the burning *Vesuvius*.

GREAT BRITAIN.

Great Britain includes three kingdoms, England, Scotland and Ireland.

England is so called from the Angles, a people of Cimbric Chersonesus, who, invited over by the Britains to assist them against the Scots and Picts, made themselves masters of the whole country, and obliged the old inhabitants to retire to that part which is now called Wales.

England is divided into seven provinces, and each province into several shires or counties. The chief city is London, the head and abstract of the whole kingdom. It is reckoned the largest city this day in Europe, and the most celebrated emporium in the world, and deserves the name of a world rather than of a city. The cities next to this for size and number of inhabitants are *York*, *Bristol* and *Norwich*.

Wales, which had long been governed by British Sovereigns, is now part of the kingdom of England. From this country the eldest sons of the kings of England are called princes of Wales.

The universities in England are at Oxford and Cambridge.

The greatest river is the Thames, which flows through London and empties itself into the German ocean.

Scotland is divided into north and south, and the islands. The principal city is Edinburgh, the universities are four, at Edinburgh, Glasgow, Aberdeen and St. Andrews.

Ireland is divided into four provinces, Ulster, Leinster, Connaught, and Munster. The chief city in this Island is Dublin.

DENMARK.

Formerly called *Dacia*, bounded on the west by the German ocean, on the east by the Baltic sea, on the north by the Sound, and on the south by part of Germany; is distributed into several portions. The whole kingdom is divided into continent and islands.

The continent is called the cimbrian chersonesus, it is a peninsula, joined by the southern parts to Germany, the continent of Cimbria is divided into north and south.

South Cimbria, or the dutchy of Sleswic, for a long time was subject both to the kings of Denmark and the dukes of Sleswic of
the

the royal house of Denmark, but it is now under the sole dominion of the Danish king. Sleswic, with the Castle of Gottorp, once the residence of the dukes, is the principal city in this duchy. The other cities are Hensburg, Hadersleb, &c.

North Cimbria or Jutland is divided into four districts or commanderies; namely, of Ripen, Wiburg, Arhusen and Alburg, so called from the several cities under those names.

In Denmark are several islands.

The larger islands are those of Zeland and *Funen*.

Copenhagen is the principal city in Zeland, the capital of Denmark, where the king resides. The rest of the cities in this island are *Helsingore*, famous for the resort of ships that pass through the Baltic, which are here to pay a tax for their passage. Near to this place stands the most magnificent and well fortified tower of Cronenburg, erected by Frederic against any invasions from the Baltic. In the heart of the island is *Roschild*, once the metropolis of the whole kingdom, now remarkable for the sepulchres of the kings; the tower of Fredericksburg, situate in a most delightful country, is the summer residence of the kings of Denmark.

Funen, which on account of its fertility may be called the nurse of Denmark: In the center of

the island is Odenſee the principal city, New-berg, &c.

The leſſer iſlands are Laland, of which the principal town is Naxkow; Falſter with the city of Nykoping. Langland, Mona, Arroa, Boringia or Bornholm, ſituate in the miſt of the Baltic with a very commodious harbour and ſtation for ſhips.

Denmark is not divided by rivers. The provinces are ſeparated by three ſeas, the leſſer *Belt* flows between Jutland and Finland, the greater *Belt* divides *Funen* from *Zeland*; beſides the famous Strait called the *Sound*, through which is a paſſage for ſhips from the German ocean into the Baltic.

There is but one univerſity belonging to Denmark and Norway, and that is at Copenhagen.

NORWAY.

Usually called *Norrighe* and *Norgbe* by the natives, is bounded on the eaſt by Sweden, from which it is ſeparated by a continued chain of mountains, to the ſouth it has the chops of the Baltic *codani ſinus fauces*, the weſtern ſide is bounded by the ocean and the northern by *Finmarck*. It is a waſte dreary land, but abounds with ports and markets. The whole kingdom is divided into four governments, of Aggerhus, Bergen, Chriſtianſand and Nidroſe. The chief cities are, Chriſtiania, where the vice-roys reſide, *Bergen* the moſt famous

famous and the greatest emporium in the kingdom, formerly the staple of the Hanse-towns; Nidrose the ancient capital and place of residence to the kings of Norway; Christianland, a new city built by Christian IV.

To Norway belong 1. Finmarck, which extends as far as the North-Cape. 2. Iceland, so called from the ice that is perpetual there: it is also noted for mount Hecla which discharges fire. 3. The Zerreen islands. 4. Greenland, which whether it is an island or joins the continent of America is uncertain. The coast of this waste region is noted for the whale fishery.

Amongst other wonders in this kingdom is reckoned that dreadful *vorago maris* or gulph not far distant from the shore of northern Norway, called Malfstrom, which rises and falls at certain times as if the sea drew breath there.

SWEDEN,

Is bounded on the south by the gulph of Finland, and by the Baltic; on the east, by Muscovy; on the north, by Norwegian Lapland; and on the west by the mountains of Norway.

The land is rough and horrid, covered with barren rocks or vast forests, but rich in ore of silver, copper and iron, and in a prodigious quantity of fish, with which it abounds, is exceeded only by Norway.

It

It is at this day divided into four regions, namely, into Sweden properly so called, Gothland, Nordland and Finland.

The chief city in Sweden properly so called and the capital of the whole kingdom is Stockholm, the place of residence for the king, fortified both by art and nature: It is situate in the marshes, after the manner of Venice, and derives its name from its situation, having its foundation raised upon piles driven into the sea-marshes. The next city to this is Upsal, where there is a famous academy and where the kings of Sweden are crowned.

Gothland is divided into east, west, and south.

South Gothland or Scania is the most fertile of all the provinces in Sweden, and is divided into Scania, Halland and Bleking. The most noted towns are Malmoge, Lunden, Christianstad, and Christianopolis. This whole region was for a long while matter of contention between the Danes and the Swedes.

Nordland is a waste region, situate to the north but not to be confounded with Lapland, which is divided into three parts belonging to as many different kingdoms, viz. Denmark, Sweden and Russia.

Finland lies between the gulph of Finland and the Bothnic, the principal town is *Abo*.

Ingria and Livonia till of late belonged to Sweden, but now they are separated from it and annexed to the empire of Russia.

A SHORT SYSTEM

The universities in Sweden are at Upsal, Lunden in Scandia, and Abo.

The LOW COUNTRIES,

For their splendor may be considered as the eye of Europe, and an abstract of the civilized world; part of Germany bounds this country on the east, the German ocean on the north, France on the south and west. It is divided into Spanish, now Austrian, French and Dutch Netherlands, and contains seventeen provinces greatly enriched with various merchandize and the most extended commerce.

The names of the provinces are, Flanders, Artois, Haynault, Namur, Luxemburg, Limburg, Brabant, Mechlin, Antwerp, Holland, Zeland, Utrecht, Gelderland, Zutphen, Overysfel, West-Friesland and Groningen.

All these provinces formerly belonged to the dukes of Burgundy, afterwards to the kings of Spain, as their heirs; but the natives finding themselves injuriously treated, and grown weary of Spanish tyranny, took up arms against Philip II. This occasioned a long war that did not cease for forty years. Part submitted to the Spaniard, part recovered their liberty. Thus the Low Countries were divided: Ten provinces yielded to Spain, the other seven established themselves and constantly and bravely asserted their freedom under the form of a republic. But since that

time the French have seized upon several cities and provinces that belonged to their Spanish neighbour; and then the provinces were divided into three parts, and the Netherlands are called Spanish, now Austrian, French, and United.

It would be endless to mention all the fine towns and strong fortresses, which some have reckoned to be more in number than in half the remaining part of Europe. They are all beautiful and rich, particularly Amsterdam, a city of such importance that it may be put in competition with a kingdom. The Hague, once the seat of the earls of Holland, is now the seat for the council of the United States; as Brussels, formerly the residence of the Spanish vice-roys, is now that of the Imperial governors, for by the treaty of Utrecht the greatest part of the Spanish towns and provinces which had been seized by the French were given up to the emperor.

GERMANY.

A very great part of Europe is terminated to the east by Poland and Hungary; by France, Flanders and Holland to the west; to the south by Switzerland and the Venetian territories; and to the north by the Baltic and German oceans. It is usually divided into Upper and Lower Germany, and according to the present constitution of the

empire into nine circles, namely, Austrian, Bavarian, Franconian, Suabian, of the upper Rhine, of the Lower Rhine, Westphalian, of Upper Saxony and Lower Saxony.

The Austrian circle comprehends Austria, Stiria, Carinthia, Carniola, and the county of *Tyrol*; the Bavarian Bavaria, with the Upper Palatinate; the Franconian, Franconia; the Suabian, Suabia, with the dutchy of Wirtemberg; that of the Upper Rhine contains Alsace, Hesse, Lorrain; that of the Lower Rhine the archbishopric of Mentz, Triers, Cologne and the Lower Palatinate. The Westphalian, Westphalia, Liege, Cleves, the dutchy of Juliers, East-Frieland; the circle of Upper Saxony contains Lusatia, Misnia, Thuringia, marquissate of Brandenburg, Pomerania: that of Lower Saxony, the dutchy of Brunswick and Lunenburg, Magdeburg, Bremen, and Holstein.

Among the chief cities in Germany are the following. In the circle of Austria, Vienna, the metropolis of Austria, in which is the emperor's palace. It is a magnificent and splendid city, and in those parts the safest fortress against the incursions of the Turks: it is situate on the Danube and is famous for the many times it has been besieged by the Turks. 2. Gratz, the capital of *Stira*. 3. Inspruck, the capital of the county of *Tyrol*. 4. Trent, famous for the council held there in the sixteenth century.

In the Bavarian circle are the following cities. 1. Munich, the fairest of all the German

man cities and the seat of the Electors of Bavaria. 2. Ratibon, commonly called Regensburg, remarkable on account of the Imperial diet held there and remains of antiquity.

In the circle of Franconia are, 1. Wurtzburg, the capital of Franconia. 2. Nuremberg, a magnificent city famed for its trade and opulence. 3. Franckfort upon the Maine, a free city of the empire and famous for its fairs.

In the Suabian circle. 1. Augsburg, a fair and splendid city, free of the empire, particularly noted for the confession of faith proposed there and thence named the Augustan confession. 2. Ulm. 3. Stutgard, the principal city of the dutchy of Wirtemberg.

In the circle of the Upper Rhine is Strasburg, in which city the tower of the cathedral deserves notice, as being one of the noblest structures in all Germany.

In the circle of the Lower Rhine is, 1. Mentz, the seat of the archbishop and elector of Mentz. 2. *Triers*, the capital of the archbishopric of *Triers*. 3. *Cologne*, i. e. *Colonia Agrippina*, so called from a colony conducted thither under the auspices of *Agrippina* wife of *Claudius*. 4. *Heidelberg*, the seat of the electors palatine.

In the circle of *Westphalia*, 1. *Munster*, the capital of Westphaly, famous for the reign of the anabaptists. 2. Aken or Aix la Chapelle,

A SHORT SYSTEM

Chapelle, remarkable for the most celebrated springs of hot water, and for the court and sepulchre of the emperor Charles the Great. In this place it was long the custom to crown the emperors.

In upper Saxony, 1. Dresden, the seat of the electors of Saxony. 2. Leipfic, respectable on account of the manners of the people, the beauty of the buildings and the fairs held there, which next to those of Franckfort upon the Maine, are the most famous in all Germany. 3. Berlin, a most agreeable city, the residence of the kings of Prussia.

In Lower Saxony, 1. Brunswick, 2. Lunenburg, famous for salt springs. 3. Bremen, a noble place of trade. 4. Lubec once a place of great strength and the chief of the Hanse-towns. 5. Hamburg, the principal city in Holstein, and most celebrated trading town upon the river Elbe.

The chief rivers in Germany are the Danube, Rhine, Ems, Maine, Weser, Elbe, Oder, Weixel or Vistula, Moselle, &c. The Danube or Ister is the most renowned as it passes through many regions, and after it has received about sixty other streams discharges itself from six mouths into the Euxine sea.

BOHEMIA and HUNGARY.

Among other regions out of Germany in subjection to emperors of the house of Austria, are

are the two kingdoms of Bohemia and Hungary.

Bohemia is encompassed with woods and mountains as with a wall, and takes its name from the Boij, a gallic nation *, it comprehends Moravia and Silesia, and boasts the most famous city of Prague. The chief town in Silesia is Breslau, and in Moravia, Olmutz.

Hungary or Pannonia is divided into upper and lower, the one on this side, the other crosses the Danube. Presburg is the capital of the first, and Buda, or, as the Germans call it, Ofen of the other. Bosnia and Slavonia used to be considered as belonging to Hungary; and Croatia and Dalmatia are parts of Slavonia.

SWITZERLAND,

Is situate between Germany, France and Italy, and is surrounded by the Alps as with a girdle: it was once under subjection to the house of Austria, but growing weary of that yoke, the Switzers shook it off, and the chief provinces forming a league asserted their freedom vigorously against their old masters and other neighbouring powers, till at length

* The Boij under Segovesus are said to have settled in this country in the sixth century before Christ. They were driven out by the Marcomanni, who were again expelled by the Slavonians in the sixth century after Christ. The language of the country-people is a dialect of the Slavonian.

Switzerland

A SHORT SYSTEM

Switzerland was by the treaty of Westphalia declared a free republic.

The whole body is at this time to be considered under three denominations. 1. The republic of Switzerland. 2. Its subjects. 3. Its allies.

The republic of Switzerland, commonly called *Eydgenossenschaft*, is divided into thirteen free communities, which are called Cantons. The chief cities are *Bern*, the most powerful, *Zurich*, and *Basil* the most famous university in Switzerland.

The subjects of Switzerland are variously divided and too numerous to be inserted here*.

The Allies are the *Rhæti* or *Grisons*, the *Vallesii* or the people of the country of *Valais*, in the Alps, and the republic of Geneva, whose capital Geneva is famous for the doctrine of Calvin which owed its birth and support to that city.

POLAND.

By the natives *Polſka* from the word *Pole*, which signifies a plain: It is bounded on the east by *Moscovy*, on the west by *Silesia*, on the south by *Hungary* and *Wallachia*, and on the north by *Prussia*, *Livonia* and *Courland*. It is at this day divided into the kingdom of Poland and the dutchy of *Lithuania*.

Poland properly so called, is again divided into greater and lesser and red *Russia*.

* See Hubner's Geography.

The most remarkable cities in the greater Poland are, Posen or Posen, and *Gnesna* the most ancient of all the cities in Poland and the first place where its princes resided.

The chief city of lesser Poland is Cracow, a large city and the metropolis of the whole kingdom. 2. Lublin, where are held the greatest fairs in all Poland. 3. Warsaw, where the kings now reside.

The chief cities in red Russia, are *Leopolis* or Lemberg. 2. Caminieck, a city built on a steep rock and therefore supposed to be impregnable.

The large city of Vilna is the metropolis of Lithuania, a country not much cultivated.

Prussia and Courland have been added to the crown of Poland. Prussia is divided into two parts, one belonging to Poland, the other to Brandenburg. Dantzic, a colony of Danes, is the principal city in Polish Prussia. Prussia of Brandenburg is the granary of the whole country, lately honoured with the title of a kingdom, the capital of which is Königsberg.

MOSCOWY.

White Russia or Moscovy comprehends a vast tract of land in Europe and Asia, and is for the greatest part both uninhabited and unpassable from its woods and marshes. The frozen sea bounds it on the north, to the east it extends through the greater Tartary almost as far

A SHORT SYSTEM

far as the confines of China. The Baltic sea closes it to the west, as does the Euxine to the south, which shews what a vast space of the Globe this country contains.

It takes its name from the river Mosqua, which discharges itself into the Occa and Volga. This wide empire is divided into east and west Tartarian and Moscovy.

Moscow is the metropolis of the whole empire, a city of incredible extent but not beautiful, the houses for the most part being built of wood. The next to this is the new city of Peterburg, lately built near the Baltic sea by *Peter* the Great, who made it the place of residence for the Imperial family, and adorned it with a port fit to receive a very large fleet, a famous university, and very costly edifices, so that it may deservedly be accounted one of the most splendid cities in Europe.

The most noted rivers in Moscovy are the Tanais, or, as it is commonly called, the Don, the Wolga, Oby and Dwina.

THRACE

Was the ancient name of a country now called Romania, situate on the Thracian Bosphorus. Constantinople is the capital of Romania and of the whole Turkish empire; this city was formerly called Byzantium, but now the Turks call it *Stamboul*: it is thought to be the greatest and most populous of all the cities

OF GEOGRAPHY.

29

cities in Europe, and it is the place where the Turkish emperors reside. Adrianople is the second city in Thrace.

The most remarkable mountains in Thrace are Hæmus, Pangæus, Rhodope, Ismarus. The rivers are the Nessus, Hebrus, and Bathynias, which the army of Xerxes is reported to have drank dry.

MOESIA

Is situate beyond Macedonia and Thrace, the Romans called it the granary of Ceres; it is divided into upper called *Servia*, and lower called *Bulgaria*.

TRANSYLVANIA

Is supposed to take its name from the vast forests that surround it, and from the seven cities in it; it is called by the Germans *Siebenbürgen*; the chief city is *Cibinium* or *Hermanstadt*.

Walachia was anciently divided into great and little: The greater is now called Moldavia, the lesser Walachia. The whole country was formerly known by the name *Dacia*, inhabited by Scythians.

Tartary in Europe or the lesser with respect to great Tartary, which is in Asia, is divided into *Precopensis* and *Crim-Tartary*, the first lies in the Chersonesus Taurica, the latter contains the rest beyond it.

GREECE,

A SHORT SYSTEM

GREECE,

Once so renowned for sciences and war, is usually distributed into five principal parts, Epirus, Peloponnesus, Hellas or Greece properly so called, Thessaly and Macedonia. The most famous cities of old in all Greece were Athens, Corinth and Lacedæmon.

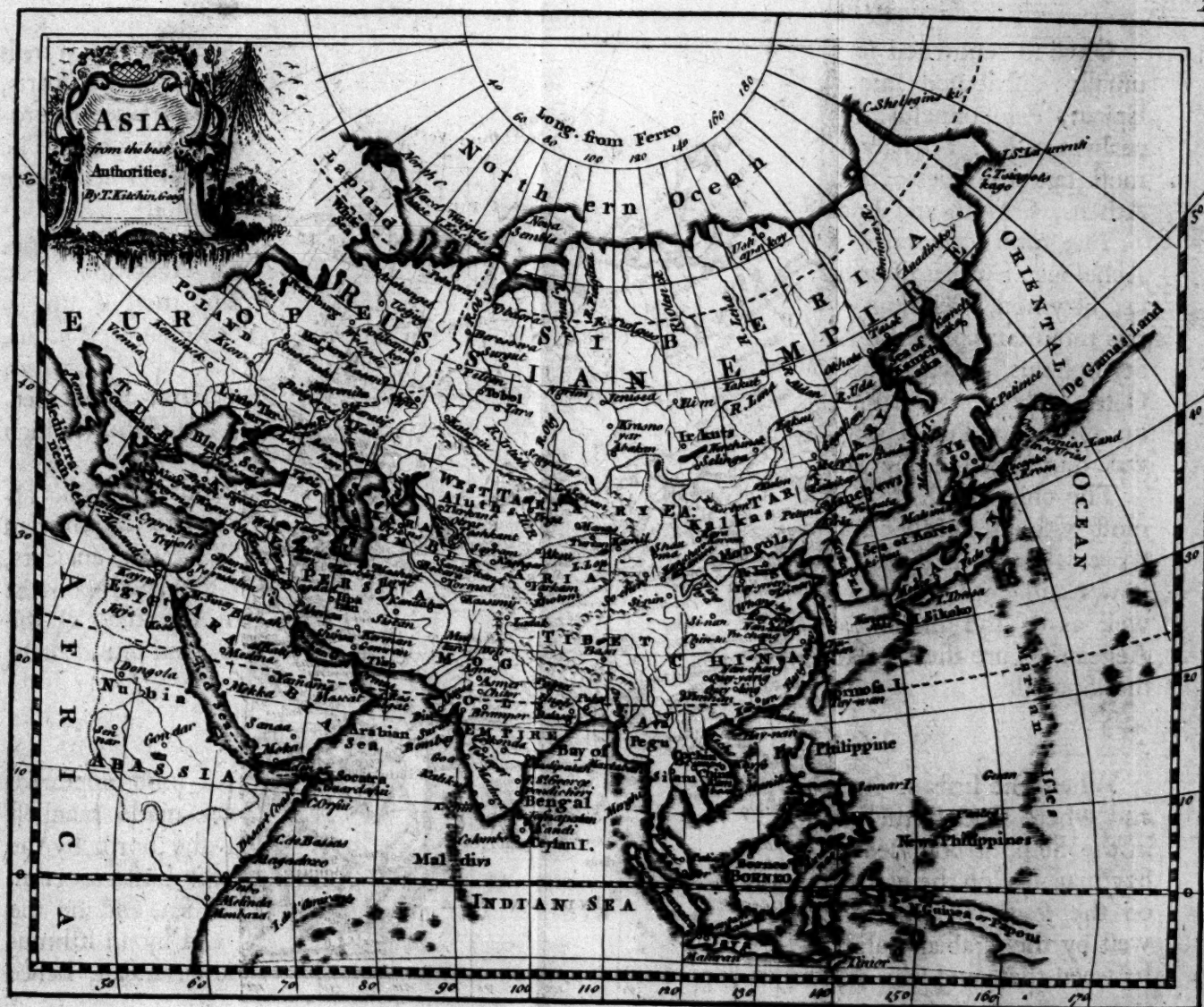
The most celebrated rivers are, Acheron, Achelous, Eurotas, Inachus, Aliacmon, Axios, Strymon, Celidnus. The most conspicuous mountains, are the Acroceraunii, Pindus, Stymphalus, Taygetus, Callidromus, Othrys, Oëta, Helicon, Parnassus, Cithæron, Hymettus, Olympus, Pelius, Ossa, and Athos, which was dug through by *Xerxes*.

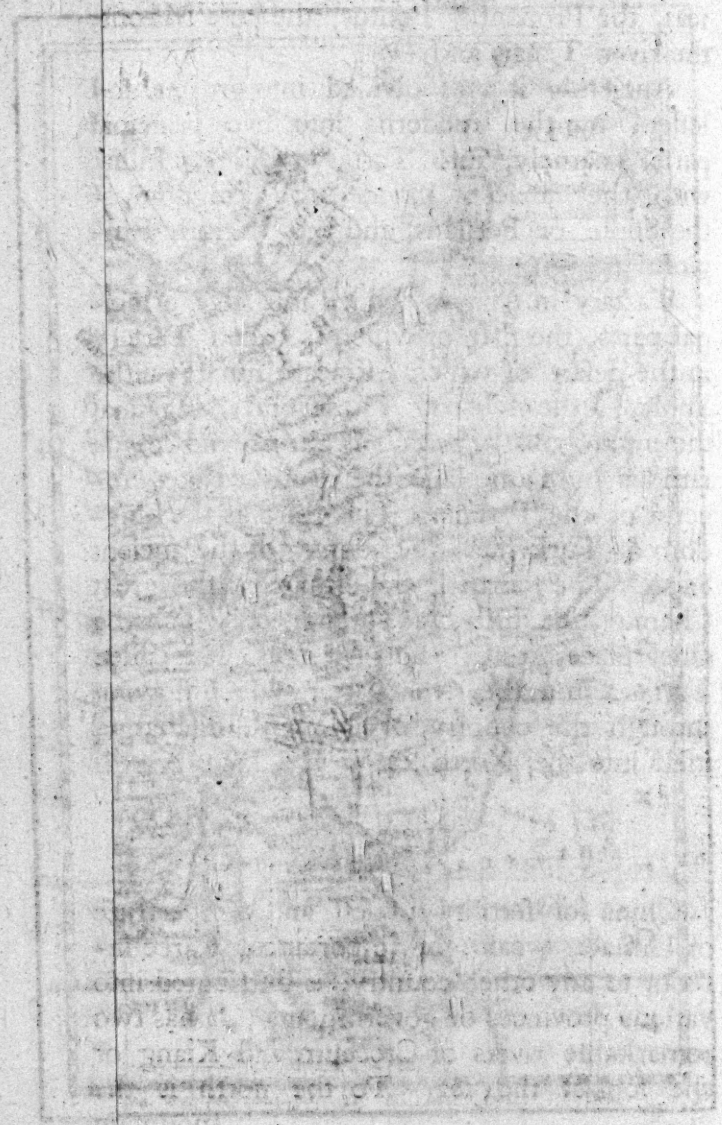
The chief of all those islands which lie almost without number opposite to the Grecian shore, is Crete, as it was called by the ancients, now Candia, the name of the metropolis as well as of the island. In the midst of the Aegean sea are the Cyclades, and round them the Sporades.

ASIA.

Where the first of human kind appeared, and where God himself was made manifest in the flesh, is bounded on the north by the Scythian sea, on the east by the Eastern ocean, on the south by the Indian sea, and on the west by the Arabian gulph and by an isthmus between that and the Mediterranean, hence

it





OF GEOGRAPHY.

31

it is bounded by the Phænician and Aegean seas, the Propontis, Pontus, the lake Mæotis, the river Tanais and *Oby*.

Anciently it was divided into greater and lesser; by the moderns into five principal parts, namely, into Tartary, China, India, with the adjacent islands, the kingdom of the Sophi or Persians, and the Turkish Empire.

Tartary in Asia, is divided into five principal parts, the first of which is called Tartary in the desert, of which Astracan, situate on the Wolga, is the chief city. The second is Zagataia, the metropolis of which is Samarcand, made famous by Tamerlane the most warlike emperor of the Tartars. The third is the kingdom of Turkestan, the country of the ancient Sacæ. The fourth is the empire of the great Cham. The fifth old Tartaria, of which the chief places are Ung and Mongul. It is called Tartaria from the river Tartar, which flowing through the country of Mongul, discharges itself into the North sea.

CHINA.

China for fertility of soil and temperature of climate, wealth or importance, scarce inferior to any other country, is distributed into various provinces or governments. It has two remarkable rivers of Croceum and Kiang or the son of the sea. To the north is the mountain

A SHORT SYSTEM

mountain Otterocora, and the wall of four hundred German miles built on its border.

The chief of the adjacent islands are Corea, Japan and Formosa.

I N D I A.

India, so fertile in precious stones, spices, gold and silver, is separated by the Ganges, on this side is Indostan, on the other Mangi, or India beyond the Ganges.

The principal parts into which India is divided are Cambaja, Narfinga, Malabar, Orixia, Bengal, Pegu, Siam, Camboia. The great Mogul, the most powerful of the kings of India, is in possession of the northern part of India, which is therefore called the empire of the Mogul.

The greatest cities in India are Cambaja or Cairo of India, Goa, Calecut, Calcutta in the province of Bengal, Pegu, Camboia, Delli and Agra. The most celebrated rivers, Indus and Ganges, which is said to abound with diamonds and gold-dust, this river gives its name to the gulph into which it flows, which however is most commonly known by the name of the gulph or bay of Bengal. The rivers Hydaspes and Hypasis fall into its channel, and it divides India into two parts.

P E R S I A.

Persia, was anciently divided as follows, into Gedrosia, Carmania, Drangiana, Arachosia,

cholia, Parapomifus, Bactriana, Margiana, Hyrcania, Aria, Parthia, Persis, Sufiana, Assyria, Media, it boasts of having Ispahan for a metropolis, and the Persians call it the half of the world. The most famous cities of old, in Persia, were Persepolis, formerly the capital of the Persian empire, and Ninive in Assyria, of which city we read in the holy scriptures.

In Asia the following regions belong to the Turkish empire, Albania, Iberia, Colchis, Armenia, Cappadocia, Galatia, Pontus and Bithynia. Asia minor or Natolia, Lycia, Pamphylia, Cilicia, Syria, Mesopotamia, Babylonia, Arabia.

Among the Islands are Cyprus, Rhodes, Lesbos and Cos.

Albania was once famous for the *Molossus* or mastiff. Iberia for poisons, Colchis the golden fleece, and the mount Caucasus. Armenia for mount Antitaurus, and the Tigris and Euphrates, the most celebrated rivers in the east, Cappadocia for the city Iconium and the rivers Iris and Thermodon; Galata for the city of Sinope, enobled by the birth of Mithridates, and mount Didymus; Pontus and Bythynia for Chalcedon the metropolis.

Natolia or Asia minor is divided into Phrygia, Mysia, Lydia, Caria, Æolia, Ionia and Doris.

The most noted cities of old in Natolia, were those of Troy or Ilium in Phrygia, famed
D for

for its siege and destruction by the Greek; Pergamus in Mysia, famous for the birth of Galen. In Lydia, Sardes and Philadelphia; in Caria, Laodicea and Priene the country of Bias; in Ionia, Ephesus famous for the Temple of Diana; in Doris, Halicarnassus, the native soil both of Herodotus and Dionysius, called Halicarnessensis from the name of his country.

The most remarkable rivers in Natolia are the Mæander, with infinite windings and turnings, in Phrygia; *Hermus* and *Pactolus* with its golden sands in Lydia. Of mountains the most conspicuous are *Cadmus* in Phrygia, which separates it from Lycia; mount *Ida* in Mysia; *Latmus* in Caria.

Lycia is famous for the burning mount *Chimæra*, which gave rise to the story of the monster with three bodies. The chief city is *Patara*, whence one of the names of Apollo was *Pataræus*.

In *Pamphylia* is mount *Taurus*, of prodigious extent, and which divides all Asia into two parts, that to the north called Asia on this side of Taurus; that to the south Asia beyond Taurus.

Cilicia, now called Carmania. The city of Tarsus which was honoured by the birth and studies of St. Paul, and the river Cydnus belong to this country.

Syria is divided into Palestine, Phenicia, Antiochia, Comagene and Cœle-Syria.

Palestine,

Palestine, in the Scriptures called Canaan or the holy land and land of promise, was anciently divided into Idumæa, Judæa, Samaria and Galilee. On account of its fertility and great abundance, this country is called in Scripture a land flowing with milk and honey.

Gaza is one of the first cities in *Idumæa*, it was inhabited by the sons of Enakim, whose gates being pulled down by Samson were carried by his miraculous strength to a neighbouring mountain near Hebron. Here also was Themnas in which country Samson slew the lion; also the desert of Bersaba, whither Agar, Sarah's servant, with her son Ismael fled, being turned out of doors, as did Elias to avoid the menaces of Jesabel.

Judæa, boasts Jerusalem its metropolis, the most famous of all cities in the east, burnt and destroyed by Titus Vespasian. Among other principal cities belonging to the Jews, and situate near the coast, Ascalon was very considerable for its strength and riches; Azotus or Asdod, Jamnia, Joppe; but in the inland country stood Bethlehem, so renowned over all the world for the birth of *Christ* our Saviour; also Jericho, or the city of Palms, which Joshua besieged. Among the towns and villages was Emmaus, in the way to which *Christ* shewed himself to two of his disciples, the same day on which he rose

from the dead; also Bethphage, Bethany, and Gethsemane.

Jordan was the principal river in Judæa, famous for the baptism of *Christ* our Saviour, and other miraculous events, recorded in Scripture. Asphaltites, called also the dead or salt sea is a lake in Judæa.

Of mountains there were some within and others without the walls of Jerusalem. *Moria*, on which was built the temple of Solomon, was within; the mount of Olives, with the neighbouring valley of Jehosaphat, and the brook Kedron, were without the walls: on the western side was mount Calvary, called also Golgotha, near to which was the garden, with the sepulchre in which *Christ* was laid.

Samaria was the name of a city and country lying between Judæa and Galilee, which had been besieged and taken by Salmanassar king of Assyria. Among other cities were Neapolis, Gamala, and on the coast Apollonia; Bethel and Dan lay between mountains; the tower of Strato or Cæsarea of Palestine shewed itself among the principal towns of Galilee, on the coast, remarkable for the magnificence of its structure which was enlarged by Herod, and for the bondage of *St. Paul*.

On the lake of *Genesareth* stood *Capernaum*, a rich and noble city, which *Christ*, leaving Nazareth, honored with his presence, dwelling and performing many miracles there;
also

also *Corazin* and *Bethsaida*, the ruin of which cities was foretold by *Christ*, and *Julias*, *Tiberias*, *Magdalum*, and *Tarachæa*: Between the lake of *Genesareth* and the *Phœnician* sea stood *Nazareth*, where *Christ* was brought up, also *Cana of Galilee*, where our Saviour performed the miracle of turning water into wine.

Genesareth was the most famous lake in *Galilee*, so called from the adjacent country of *Genesar*, otherwise the sea of *Tiberias*, from a city on the banks thereof. It was also called the sea of *Galilee*, because it was for the greatest part inclosed in it. *Hermon* was famed for its dew, one of the most remarkable hills opposite to which are those of *Gilboah*, on which *Saul King of Israel* was slain by the *Philistines*: between these hills is the valley of *Jesreel*. *Tabor* was the hill on which was the transfiguration of *Jesus*.

Phœnicia is divided into *Upper Galilee*, or *Galilee of the Gentiles* and *Syro-Phœnicia*, *Tyre* and *Sidon*, were the greatest cities; and *Libanon*, *Antilibanon* and *Carmel* the highest mountains.

Antiochene, was called *Tetrapolis* on account of the four following towns, *Antioch*, *Apamea*, *Seleucia*, *Laodicea*; in this country are mount *Casius*, and the rivers *Belus*, *Lycus*, *Adones*.

A SHORT SYSTEM

In *Comagene*, the last district in Syria, *Samosata* was once the capital, noted for the birth of Lucian.

Cœle Syria, or Syria in the bottom, is divided into three remarkable districts, *Decapolis*, *Tetrachias* and *Palmyra*. *Damascus*, was formerly the capital of this kingdom and of all Syria.

Mesopotamia, of which *Seleucia Magna* was anciently one of the principal cities, is situate between the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*. Not far from *Mesopotamia* was *Babylon* the metropolis of *Babylonia* in *Assyria*, eminent for the many ancient accounts given of it. The part of *Babylonia* towards the south, is called *Chaldæa*.

Arabia is distinguished by the names of *Petræa*, the desert, and *Arabia felix*. The first was inhabited by the *Nabathœi*; the Desert by the *Nomades* and *Scenitæ*; the last, which abounds with spices and frankincense, by the *Saracens*, the *Minæi* and *Sabeans*, who had a town called *Saba*. Of all the mountains in *Arabia*, of the Desert the most famous was that of *Sinai*, distinguished by the delivery of the law of God.

The most remarkable modern cities in that part of Asia already described are, *Damascus*, *Aleppo*, *Alexandretta*, *Tripoli* of Syria, and *Mecca* in *Arabia felix*, eminent for the birth of *Mohammed*.

Lesbus, *Chius*, *Samus* and *Cos*, are the principal islands in the *Ægean sea*: Cyprus
and





and Rhodes in the Asiatic sea. The first of these islands was anciently dedicated to Venus, the other had a Colossal statue of the sun, which was one of the seven wonders of the world.

A F R I C A,

The greatest peninsula in the world, being joined to Asia, by a narrow isthmus; it has the red sea to the east, the Atlantic to the west, the Mediterranean to the north, and the Æthiopic to the south.

The regions according to which Africa is at present distinguished are, *Ægypt*, *Barbary*, *Biledulgerid*, *Sarra* in the Desert, the country of *Nigritia*, Upper and Lower *Æthiopia*.

Ægypt is divided by the Nile into Upper and Lower: it is eminent, for the cities of *Alexandria*, *Thebes* of *Egypt*, *Arsinoe*, *Helio- polis*, and *Memphis* and near it those stupendous structures of the Pyramids. The metropolis of modern *Egypt* is *Cairo* or *Alkair*.

The most celebrated river of *Egypt* is the *Nile*, which at a certain time of the year overflows, and discharges itself at seven mouths into the Egyptian sea.

Barbary comprehends the country of *Barca*, the eastern half of which was by the ancients called *Cyreniaca*, the kingdom of *Tunis* or

A SHORT SYSTEM

Africa minor, the country of Tripoli, that of Tremisen, including Numidia, the kingdoms of Fez and Morocco, and Dara. Tunis is the capital of the kingdom of that name, Algiers, infamous for its piracies, is the metropolis of Tremisen.

Biledulgerid, anciently *Gætulia*, or the country of Dates, is bounded on the south by mount Atlas, the highest in all Africa, which old authors have reported to shine with frequent fires in the night, and to resound with the songs of Satyrs and Ægipans, and the noise of drums and cymbals.

Sarra or Zaara of the Desert, anciently *Lybia interior*, consists of immense deserts, with dens and retreats of wild beasts, and reaches from mount Atlas to the river Niger.

The country of Nigritia is washed by the Niger, the noblest river in Africa; and is divided into several districts, the chief of which is Guinea, the coast of which from the quantity of gold found there is called the Golden coast.

Æthiopia is divided into Upper or the kingdom of *Abyssinia*, and Lower, and the regions of *Congo*, *Monomotapa*, *Cafreria*, *Zangibar*, *Ajan*, *Nubià*, and *Troglodytica*.

The most noted inhabitants of Africa among the ancients were the Ægyptians, who contended with the Scythians for the antiquity of their nation, and were the inventors of many arts. Besides these were the
Nasa-





OF GEOGRAPHY.

41

Nasamones, Pfylli, Nomades, Troglodytæ, Garantes, Mauri, Gætuli, Nubii, Nigritæ, Æthiopes Anthropopagi or Canibals, now called *Cafres* or *Hottentots*.

The greatest Island near the African coast is that of *Madagascar*, discovered in 1492; the Islands of *Cape Verd*, *Madeira*, and the *Canaries*, with that of *St. Thomas* and *St. Helena* in the *Ethiopic* sea deserve notice.

A M E R I C A

Is bounded on the north by the *Arctic Lands*, on the south by the *Straits of Magellan*, which separate it from *Terra del fuego*; on the east by the *Atlantic* or *Western Ocean*; on the west by the *Pacific* or *South Sea*.

The whole continent of *America* is divided into north and south, by a narrow *Isthmus* passing between them.

In *North America* are the following countries.

British Plantations, in which the principal town is *Boston*.

Arctic Lands, New Wales, Greenland.

Labrador or *New Britain*.

New Albion, California.

Mexico or *New Spain*, in which is the city of *Mexico*.

New Mexico or *Granada*, with the town of *Santa Fe*.

Louisiana, with the city of *New Orleans*.

Florida, with the city of *St. Augustin*.

Canada, in which the principal town is *Quebec*.

Principal



A SHORT SYSTEM, &c.

Principal rivers in *North America*, are *St. Laurence*, and *Mississipi*.

South America is divided into the following great parts. *Terra Firma* with the city of *Panama*. *Peru*, in which is *Lima*. *Brasil* with *St. Salvador*. Land of the *Amazons*. *Chili*, in which is *St. Jago*. *Paraguay*, with the town called *Assumption*. *Magellanic lands*.

Principal rivers in *South America* are the *Rio de la Plata*, and *Amazon*.

The chief of the *American Islands* are as follows. *Newfoundland*, *Cape Breton*, *Bermudas*, &c.

Islands in the *West Indies*.

Cuba, *Hispaniola* or *St. Domingo*, *Jamaica*, *Porto Rico*, *Lucayos* or *Bahama Isles*; with the *Antiles* or *Caribbees*, with many others of less note.

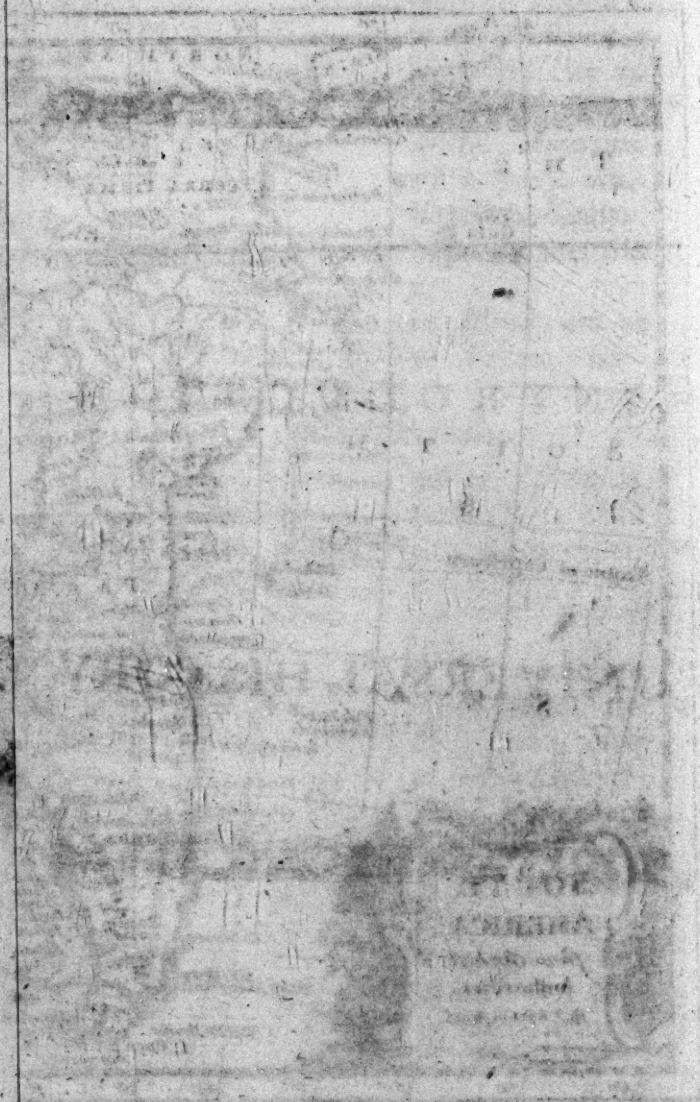
Arctic lands.

The lands included under this name are *New Guinea*, which lies to the east of the *Molucco Islands* in the east Indies; *New Britain*, a little to the east of *New Guinea*; *New Holland*, to the south of the *Moluccos*; *Van Diemens land*, to the south east of *New Holland*; the *Terra Australis*, to the south west of the *Cape of Good Hope* in *Africa*; the lands of the *Holy Spirit* lie about 20 degrees to the east of *New Holland*; and *New Zealand* as many to the east of *Van Diemens land*.

A N









AN
INTRODUCTION
TO
UNIVERSAL HISTORY.





INTRODUCTION

UNIVERSAL HISTORY

TO

UNIVERSAL HISTORY

UNIVERSAL HISTORY



AN
INTRODUCTION
TO
UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

HISTORY is the relation of things past, delivered with this view, that the remembrance of them may be preserved, and that we may be taught by example to be good and happy.

History, properly speaking, differs from chronology, as materials from the regular disposition of them. History gives the former, chronology the latter. The one contents itself with a plain narration of events, without fixing the exact times in which they happened, the other by certain marks and traces determines those times.

Times are distinguished under various epochs and æras.

An

AN INTRODUCTION

An epoch is a certain space of time that begins with æras, and concludes with some remarkable change of things. The first epoch of time, for example, is said to have been that space which intervened between Adam and the flood; the second from the flood to the days of Abraham: and as an epoch is no other than the certain commencement of every kingdom or government, and as it were the reins of time, by which history is ascertained and fixed to some certain point, so it is derived from a word in the Greek language signifying to restrain, ἀπο τε ἐπέχειν.

An Æra is a date from whence the reckoning begins by years. This word, as some think, owes its origin to the Spaniards. In the time of Augustus it was usual with them to write, when these things were done A.ER.A. *Annus erat Augusti*, it was the year of Augustus; from these letters not understood, the ignorant coined a new word reading AERA. The author of this etymology is Sepulveda the Spaniard, but others differ from him*. It is to be observed, that there are many æras.

I. The

* Scaliger, speaking of this fancy of Sepulveda's, says, "It is ridiculous, and yet the conceit took such hold of the learned Spaniard, that he seems to have written his book de Emendatione Anni, merely for the sake of it." This Sepulveda wrote in defence of the cruelties of the Spaniards in America, and was warmly opposed by De las Cafas, confessor to Charles the Vth. Many absurd derivations

1. The æra of the foundation of the world.

2. The æra of the Olympiads, taken from the olympic games, which were celebrated every fifth year in the city of Elis. Each Olympiad comprehended four years, and the begining of this æra was in the year of the world 3174, and before Christ 776.

3. The æra of the building of Rome, A. M. 3197, and before Christ 753.

4. The christian æra, the boundary and hinge of chronology; a common period, to which all the various reckonings of chronologers are reducible. Their æra is A. M. 3950†. Dionysius the Little, who flourished

various besides this have been given of the word æra. Some derive it from *bera*, one of the names of Juno. Petavius, Scaliger, Calvisius, assert that it is an old Latin word signifying number, as may be proved from Nonius, Faustus Regienfis, and Cicero. Others derive it from *arab*, an Arabic word that signifies to reckon, and this will very well account for the use of it in Spain, considering the connexion of that people with the Moors. But *bera* in Spanish signifies time, which may have been an old Gothic word, whence also the Saxon *gepe*, or year, and all originally from the oriental *arab*.

† Various are the opinions of Chronologers, as to the time comprehended between the creation and the birth of Christ. Strauch gives us a table of fifty computations. The highest is that of king Alphonfus, who makes this Epoch to consist of 6484 years; and the lowest is that of the lesser Jewish chronicle, which estimates this interval at 3670 years. Usher's computation, which is commonly received, is 4004 years. But it is to be observed, that the æra of Dionysius is allowed to be four years later than the birth of Christ.

in the reign of Justinian, is reported to have been the contriver of this æra, after him, called the æra of Dionysius.

5. * The Turkish æra or Hegira, which begins from the flight of Mohammed in the year of Christ 622.

† The old Greeks reckoned from the beginning

* This æra took its rise from the prophet's flight from Mecca to Medina on Friday, July 16, An. C. 622. It is a lunar year beginning with the new moon of that time, which is the reason of the regard for crescents in the East, where they rise on every mosque.

† Iphitus restored the Olympic Games 776 years before Christ, and from this æra the Olympiads are now reckon'd. Newton's Chronology.

It is very difficult to fix the date of the Olympic Games, for chronologers differ exceedingly in their reckonings. Sir Isaac Newton says, the artificial chronologers have made Iphitus 112 years older than the first Olympiad, and Lycurgus to be as old as Iphitus, and that they feigned 28 Olympiads older than the first. To prove this, 1. He cites Plato, who introduces Socrates, who died three years after the end of the Peloponnesian war, saying the institutions of Lycurgus were about three hundred years standing. 2. Thucydides, in the reading followed by Stephens, says the same thing, that the Lacedemonians, from the time, &c. to the end of the Peloponnesian war, there were about three hundred years. Count three hundred years back from the Peloponnesian war, and they place the legislature of Lycurgus upon the 19th Olympiad. 3. Athenæus tells us out of ancient authors, that Lycurgus was contemporary to Terpander, the first who obtained the prize in music in the 26th Olympiad. He overcame four times in those Pythic Games, and therefore lived till the 29th Olympiad; but he began to flourish in the days of Lycurgus, therefore it is not likely that Lycurgus began to flourish before the 18th Olympiad. 4. Iphitus and Lycurgus were both restorers

ginning of their Olympiads; the Romans from
the

stors of the Olympic Games; Iphitus restored racing in the first Olympiad, Coræbus victor; in the 14th the double stadium was added, Hypænus victor. In the 18th the Quinquertium added, Lampus and Eurybatus two Lacedæmonians victors. But the Disc was one of the Games of the Quinquertium, and Pausaniās says, there were three Discs kept in the Olympic treasury, and these having the name of Lycurgus upon them, shew they were given by him at the institution of the Quinquertium in Olymp.

18. 5. From the return of the Heraclidæ into Peloponnesus, to the end of the reign of Agefilaus, there were six reigns, and Lycurgus published his laws in the reign of Agefilaus: but from that return to the end of the reign of Polydectes, who left the kingdom to Lycurgus, there were also six reigns, and these at 20 years each make 120 years, besides the short reign of Euristhenes and Proclus, which might amount to a year or two more; and if Lycurgus did not meddle with the Olympic Games till he was king, Polydectes must have died in the beginning of the 18th Olympiad; and if the 20th fell out in the middle between the deaths of Polydectes and Agefilaus, counting thence 121 years upwards, the returns of the Heraclidæ will be 45 years before the beginning of the Olympiads. 6. Oxylus returned with the Heraclidæ, Iphitus was the son of Praxonidas, the son of Oxylus, the son of Hæmon; the return therefore will be two generations by eldest sons, or about 52 years before the Olympiads. 7. The reign of Cypselus chronologers allow to have begun An. 2. Olymp. 31. But Melas was contemporary with Aletes, who returned with the Heraclidæ, and was not above six generations older than Cypselus; allow 30 years to a generation, and count backwards from An. 2. Olymp. 31. and they place the Heraclidæ 58 years before the first Olympiad. 8. Iphitus and his successors presided in the Olympic Games till the 26th Olympiad; but then the Pisceans getting above the Eleans, began to preside, and instituted the Carneæ, &c. till Phidon interrupted them about the 49th Olympiad; for in the 48th Olympiad, the Eleans entered

the building of Rome*, the Syrians, and most

the country of the Piseans, and they made war upon the Eleans, and were beat. In this war (in the 49th Olympiad) Phidon presided; for in the 50th two men were chosen out of the city of Elis to preside, and in the 65th nine, afterwards ten. They were called Hellenodicae. 9. Phidon was the tenth (from father to son) from Temenus (inclusive of him) allow 27 years to a generation by eldest sons, and the nine intervals make 243, which, counted back from the 48th Olympiad, will place the return of the Heraclidæ about 50 years before the Olympiads. But Pausanias places it in the ninth, instead of the 49th, says Sir Isaac.

The reverend and learned Mr. Jackson who has taken infinite pains to reduce the chronology of all ancient kingdoms to one system, differs from Sir Isaac Newton in this account of the Olympiads, and thinks that Iphitus and Lycurgus were contemporary restorers of the Olympic Games. He has produced sufficient authorities to prove them both to have been restorers, but not to prove them contemporary. Pausanias indeed says, that Iphitus lived in the time Lycurgus wrote laws for the Lacedæmonians, and it was very easy for him and Athenæus to fall into this mistake, concluding that because they were restorers they were contemporary. But Pausanias says not that Lycurgus was concerned in the truce. The oracle commands Iphitus and the Eleans, not Lycurgus, to revive the Games. The Disc that had the terms of the truce, &c. written upon it, and which must therefore be very unfit for the game of the Quoit, is expressly called the Disc of Iphitus, not of Lycurgus: all this could not have happened, so great was the name of Lycurgus, if they had been jointly concerned in this truce. In answer to the fourth argument of Sir Isaac Newton, he is pleased to say, "Sir Isaac did not know what this Disc was, .. it did not belong to the game of the Quoit, but was the Disc on which the treaty was written, with the laws of the game and names of Iphitus and Lycurgus." Pausanias expressly calls the Disc, on which the treaty was inscribed circularly

most other eastern people from the beginning
of

circularly round, the Disc of Iphitus, without any mention of Lycurgus, and therefore this could not be the Disc mentioned by Aristotle, who speaks only of the name of Lycurgus being preserved upon it. In answer to the first argument, Mr. Jackson supposes Plato wrote 400 not 300 years, because it is 400 in Diodorus, and in all the Greek copies of Thucydides. When Sir Isaac uses this expression of *the copy followed by Stephens*, he evidently means that Stephens followed some other copy than those in use when he inserted 300 instead of 400 in his Latin translation, so far was he from imposing on his reader; and to prevent any suspicion of fraud, he refers to the very passage in the margin. And Mr. Jackson should not think it *so surprising to be told*, when he himself has followed a Latin translation of Eusebius in contradiction to the Greek, p. 104. vol. 2. It is not easy to suppose this reading of H. Stephens to be a mistake of the press, as Mr. Jackson conjectures. In languages the compositor understands he may mistake one word for another, but in general his mistakes are of letters, and transpositions, and omissions, and can hardly be any other in the learned languages. In answer to the third argument, it is said that there is but one of three authors who supposed Lycurgus contemporary to Terpander, and he might mistake, or his evidence is too weak to set aside the concurrent testimony of all other historians," &c. But Terpander imitated Orpheus and Homer, and wrote the laws of Lycurgus in verse, was the first who distinguished the modes of Lyric music, and was victor in the 26th Olympiad. The truth is, Hellicanus one of the three, says Terpander, was the first who overcame in the Carneæ. Sosimus, the next, says those festivals were instituted in the 26th Olympiad, and Hieronymus the third, says Terpander, was contemporary to Lycurgus. Thus it is in Athenæus, and this is all Sir Isaac can be understood to say. In answer to the eighth argument, the authority of Pausanias and other writers is produced by Mr. Jackson. The other arguments remain I think unanswered.

AN INTRODUCTION

of Seleucus †, as the christians to this day from the birth of Christ ‡, and the Turks from the Hegira.

Chronologers have made use of two different sorts of years, the one taken from the course of the sun, the other from that of the moon. The first called a solar year is again divided into two, one of them is exact, and measures the entire course of the sun; it is called a tropical year, because it begins with the solstice (called *τροπας*) and determines in 365 days and the fourth part of a day nearly. The other of them is called a civil year, less accurate than the former, and subservient to popular uses.

All the author means by this long note, is to vindicate Sir Isaac Newton in this part of his chronology, and by no means to depreciate the most learned, laborious, and useful chronological antiquities of Mr. Jackson, which on the contrary he would recommend to all, as containing a vast collection of historical knowledge.

* Rome was founded 753 years before the birth of Christ, according to the common chronology; but only 627 years before that æra, according to Sir Isaac Newton. See his Chronol. p. 38.

† After Seleucus the Greeks left off using the æra of Olympiads, and reckoned from the beginning of his reign, which was 12 years after the death of Alexander.

‡ This æra was not in use till the year 532, after our Saviour's nativity, and was fix'd by Dionysius, called the Little. Concerning the æra of Nabonassar, which is of great use in history and chronology, though omitted by our author, it is proper to observe, that according to Censorinus the 986th of Nabonassar was the 238th of Christ, or 4951 of the Julian period, and that therefore the first of Nabonassar was the 3967th of that period, or the 747th year before Christ.

The

The lunar year contains 354 days. This kind of year is now in use among the Arabians, Turks, and Saracens.

There are other marks and characters of time, or chronological terms which ought to be explained, as Cycle, Epacts, &c.

There are two principal Cycles*, one of the moon, consisting of 19 years, at the end of which course the new moon happens at the same time as when it began: the other of the sun, consists of 28 years, which ended, the same order of dominical letters is repeated.

Epacts are the eleven days added to lunar years, that they may equal solar years. They are so named from a Greek word (*επακτιν*) which signifies to add or intercalate. These few notices are sufficient for beginners, and are necessary, because of their perpetual use and occurrence in history.

Annals differ from history as they shew only the facts done in the year as the Ephemerides do the occurrences by days. His-

* First Harpalus, then Eudoxus, and at last Meton, discovered, that the revolution of the Moon was not completed, or that the same lunations did not recur in less than 19 years. Add an Unit to the year of Christ, divide the sum by 19, and the remainder is the Cycle of the Moon. For the Cycle of the sun add 9 to the year of our Lord, and then divide by 28, and the remainder is the Cycle of the Sun.—Concerning these æra's, and other chronological matters, consult the *Institutiones Chronologicæ* of bishop Beverege.

tory is more general, and recites not only actions, but explains their causes and consequences.

A memoir is a book, in which for the ease of memory, is set down an abstract or summary of things as they occur; and when a history is composed from memoirs it differs from them as much as the materials, lime, wood, stone, differ from the buildings they compose.

OF HISTORY PROPERLY SO CALLED.

History is divided into three periods of time, the first from the creation to the deluge; which age is reckoned *uncertain* (*αδελον*) because we know no more than the short account given of it in the holy Scriptures. The second from the deluge to the first Olympiad, which from the many feigned stories related in it, is called (*μυθικον*) the fabulous age: the third from the first Olympiad to our own times is called (*ιστορικον*) historical, because the actions done in that period are recorded by writers of true history.

History, with respect to the matter it contains, is divided first, into civil, which contains political affairs. 2dly, Sacred, which discourses of ecclesiastical or church business. 3dly, Literary, which records the lives and productions of learned men, the controversies that

that subsisted amongst them, and the rise and increase of sciences. 4thly, Natural, explaining physical and natural things. 5thly, Artificial, giving an account of arts, their origin and progress. 6thly, and lastly, Miscellaneous, which delivers many various things as they promiscuously occur in human life. Thus is history divided as to its matter. But with respect to time it is divided into several epochs, periods, and intervals.

To ease the scholar's memory, and not oblige him to read incoherent, desultory paragraphs, it seems to me most convenient to include all history under four monarchies, that it may hang together and appear as one thing. But as the most ancient scripture-history, beginning with the creation of the world, cannot be comprehended under the four monarchies, it will be necessary to dispatch by itself the history of the people of God, before we proceed to the rest of mankind.

ANCIENT SACRED HISTORY.

In ancient sacred history, otherwise called the History of the Old Testament, there are several remarkable periods, the first of which contains the age of the Antediluvian patriarchs. 2dly, The men who lived after the flood. 3dly, The state of the Jewish nation under the judges. 4thly, Under kings. 5thly,

Under the high-priests. 6thly, Under the Macchabees, princes and kings. 7thly, Their state under the Herodian family.

From the creation of the world to the deluge are reckoned 1656 years*.

i. Adam,

* Concerning the difference of these large numbers, as they are found in the Hebrew, Samaritan, and Greek copies, much has been said by many writers, and yet after all many doubts may remain. And if they are not made subservient to the wicked purposes of infidelity, there is certainly no greater harm in modestly doubting where the best men have differed, than in being very positive and dogmatical about matters of such remote antiquity, and where the data are so few, and mistakes in numbers of all others the most likely to happen, especially in these languages. If they anciently made use of numeral characters, that is, of alphabetical letters instead of nouns of number, how small and almost undistinguishable is the difference between (ד) 4, and (ק) 100, and several other numerical expressions; and in the Greek between Α 1, Δ 4, and Λ 30, &c. Nor is the expression of whole words less liable to mistakes, for the smallest of all the characters, a jot (jod) or tittle added to the digit, turns it into tens; and perhaps there is an instance of this, 2 Samuel xv. 7. And it came to pass after 40 years, that Absalom said unto the king, &c. 40 years after what? The king did not reign above 40 years in all, therefore it could not be 40 years after David came to the crown. Absalom is described as a beautiful young man with flowing hair, it could not be therefore that Absalom was 40 years of age, but it was four years after his flight to Geshur, where he continued three years, and being in the third year restored to his father's house, he made his court to the people, and stole the hearts of the men of Israel from the king. He was two full years in Jerusalem before he saw the face of his father, and then it came to pass after four not 40 years, that Absalom said unto

1. Adam, lived 930 years.
2. Seth 912.
3. Enos 905.
4. Cainan 910.
5. Mahalaleel 895.
6. Jared 962.
7. Enoch 365.
8. Methufalem 969.
9. Lamech 777.
10. Noah, who lived before and after the deluge, in all 950 years.

The

unto the king, Let me go and pay my vow in Hebron. It is to be observ'd, that no other dates are mentioned in this and the two preceding chapters but what relate to Abfalom.

There are many more instances than this in Lud. Capellus, and other writers of sacred criticism. And that the strictest regard has not always been shewn to the original numbers is most evident from comparing the Greek version with the Hebrew, where the difference will be found in the birth of children one hundred years to almost every one of them, which could not have happened but by design. And besides other alterations, another Cainan, the son of Arphaxad, has been foisted in to augment the number, who is not to be found in Theophilus of Antioch, Irenæus, Epiphanius, or Eusebius, nor the copies used by Jerom. This interpolation, and the change in the numbers, seems to be very well accounted for by the learned Mr. John Gregory. The cabalists finding the letter A, (Α) which is often used numerically for 1000, to occur six times in the first verse of the first chapter of Genesis, concluded that the world should last 6000 years, for a thousand years with God is but as one day, and that after 6000 years, answering to the six days of creation, there should be a sabbatical year,

The most remarkable of these Antediluvian fathers were,

1. Adam. God formed him of the earth, and gave to him dominion over other creatures. But he is deluded by Satan, disobeys the Lord by eating the forbidden fruit, and therefore together with Eve his wife is cast

year, or a millenary sabbath of rest, or a rest for 1000 years. Hence came the Millenaries or Chiliafts. The tradition required, that the 6000 years should be equally divided by the times of Phalec, or Peleg, which in Hebrew signifies division. "But by the period of Theophilus, the interval from Adam to Phalec was 2891 years: to this 110 years were to be added (to make up 3001, or the equal division or half of 6000 years.) First therefore, and to make it look more unlike a cheat, they cut off 20 years from Methusala's sum, and whereas Theophilus had reckoned him at 187, they set him down 167, as in some copies it still standeth. Then it was from Adam to Phalec 2871 years. This done, they insert a new Cainan, assigning him 130 years, which added to the former sum, precisely maketh up 3001 years from Adam, to the 130 year of Phalec. And therefore Cainan was not taken into the 70 out of St. Luke, as the learned Grotius prejudg'd, but contrarily. Which how likely it might be done by such in whose opinion this translation stood upon the same terms as St. Luke's gospel, is not hard to be believed." So says Mr. J. Gregory. See also p. 291, of the Universal History.

However ridiculous the Jews and some Christians may have represented the future Millennium, it is certain, from the Revelation of St. John, that the just shall rise first, and reign 1000 years with Christ before the rest of the dead.

Mr. Jackson has said much in favour of the second Cainan's being in the original of both Testaments, in the first volume of his Chronology, which deserves to be considered.

out

out of Paradise. The most noted of their children are Cain and Seth: from the former, who slew his brother Abel, descended an impious race called by his name, from the latter the patriarchs whose names are recorded.

2. Enoch, who, for the holiness of his life, was translated alive unto God.

They who descended from Seth, lived under the patriarchal Government*. But among the posterity of Cain various societies, empires and tyrannies arose. Of these mention is made in scripture under the name of Nephilim or † tyrants.

The Antediluvian fathers are thought to have been ignorant of arts and letters, but without doubt, considering the length of their lives they must have excelled in the knowledge of nature and in agriculture. The Scriptures also testify that the first city was built by Henoah: it ascribes the invention of music to Jubal, and of working in brass and iron to Tubal Cain. What is related of the fifteen sons of Adam and the pillars of Seth are the dreams and fables of idle men.

* Nothing more ought to be understood than that they liv'd together in families, not that any one could have a right to tyrannize over all the rest.

† Neither Nephilim nor Rephaim will now be interpreted of giants by any who do not mean to ridicule the Scriptures, as has been lately done by the author of letters upon history.

THE SECOND PERIOD OF ANCIENT SACRED HISTORY.

The second period includes 857 years, from the deluge to the going forth of the Israelites out of Egypt.

Impiety every day increasing amongst the posterity of Cain, and the 120 years God granted them for repentance being expired, without producing repentance, Noah, the son of Lamech, builds by divine command a large ark *, and enters into it with his family and two of every kind of animals, in the year of the world 1656 †, and they alone are preserved when every other living thing is destroyed by the deluge. But the waters at length decreasing the ark rests upon Ararat, a mountain in Armenia.

a. C.
xxiv. or
xxiii.

N. B.
xxiii. or
xxiv.

a. C.
signifies
thexxiiiid
or xxivth
century
before
Christ; for
the point
is not set-
tled.

The whole surface of the earth is supposed to have undergone an alteration by the violence of the waters that had overwhelmed it. Shortness of life, diseases, and all the train of evils we now feel, followed it. And that the surface of the earth has actually undergone some considerable change is evident,

* The possibility of this relation is well accounted for by bishop Wilkins, in his book of the Real Character.

† According to Scaliger's computation followed by our author the deluge happened in the 2294th year before Christ; but according to Archbishop Usher, it happened in the 2348th year before the Christian æra.

from

from the spoils of the sea, which are still discovered on the tops of mountains, and in the midst of rocks*.

Noah had three sons, Sem, Ham and Japhet, whose descendants peopled the whole earth. Europe, with a part of Asia, fell to Japhet, the rest of Asia to Sem, and Africa to Cham. Of the posterity of Ham and Japhet there is nothing more to be said: for what prophane authors have delivered concerning the origin of nations is very dark and fabulous: but there is an account of the posterity of Sem, in scripture.

The patriarchs after the flood were,

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. Noah. | 8. Nahor. |
| 2. Sem. | 9. Terah. |
| 3. Arphaxad. | 10. Abraham. |
| 4. Heber. | 11. Isaac. |
| 5. Peleg. | 12. Jacob. |
| 6. Regu. | 13. Joseph. |
| 7. Sarug. | |

Of these patriarchs the most remarkable were,

1. Sem, greatly celebrated because his posterity continued in the worship of the true God.

* Perhaps the disturbances, visible enough in this globe, cannot altogether be so well accounted for by the deluge alone, as by supposing it to have been an old planet repaired in the manner describ'd by Moses. See the reverend Mr. Jackson's Chronology, vol. 1.

2. Abraham

xx. a. C. 2. Abraham, who for his piety and faith is called the father of the faithful. He passed into the land of Canaan with his brother Lot and his wife Sarah, under the divine command A. M. 2024. Thence he went into Egypt, forced by a famine, where he staid some years and returned. The rite of circumcision was instituted in the 99th year of Abraham, which distinguished his posterity from other nations. A promise of the land of Canaan is made to him and his posterity, and in his seed all the nations of the world were to be blessed*.

a. C. 3. Isaac, the only son Abraham had by
xix. Sarah, and who was the father of Jacob.

4. Jacob, called Israel, author of the Israelites. He left twelve sons, founders of

* The intended sacrifice of Isaac has often been objected to by infidels as impious and cruel, unworthy God to command, and most unnatural in a father to execute. But it is manifest from the event, that Providence did not intend the death or sacrifice of Isaac. All that Abraham was required to do by the divine Command, Gen. xxii. was to OFFER up his son, his only son, whom he loved for a burnt-offering. And when this was done, when he had *offer'd* his son, and given this utmost proof of his fidelity, and would have proceeded to the sacrifice, the angel of the Lord calls unto him out of Heaven, and says, Lay not thine hand upon the lad. If a reason is demanded for this *offering* up of Isaac, besides the trial of his father's faith, let it be remember'd, that he, who was thus *dedicated* to the Lord, was he whom the Lord had given to Abraham and Sarah in their old age, after whom the seed of Abraham was to be called, and in his seed were all the nations of the earth to be blessed.

the

TO UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

63

the 12 tribes of Israel. He went into Egypt with his children, and died there in the 147th year of his age. a. C.
xviii.
xvii.

5. Joseph, who being envied of his brethren, was taken away and sold and carried into Egypt and there bought by Potiphar, chief of Pharoah's chamberlains. Here, when he grew up to be a man, his mistress tempts him, but in vain, to commit adultery with her, and then, by false accusation, procures his imprisonment for three years, in return for his fidelity and innocence. He is taken from thence to interpret the king's dream, and foretelling seven years famine, and as many years of plenty he is set over all Egypt. Jacob in the third year of the famine goes into Egypt with all his family and settles there.

After Joseph's death, who had protected them, the offspring of Jacob increasing daily, the king of Egypt, actuated by fear and envy, is resolved to break their strength, that they might not be in a condition to revolt, and therefore commands every male infant to be killed and thrown into the river. But Moses being exposed in the water is saved by Pharoah's daughter. xvi. a. C.

Moses, son of Amram, when forty years of age slew an Egyptian for striking an Hebrew, and to escape punishment flies to Midian, where he marries Zippora, daughter of Jethro, the priest. In the eightieth year of xv. a. C.

of his age he is employed in executing the divine command for freeing the Israelites from Egyptian bondage. Having in vain solicited Pharoah for their departure, he terrified the Egyptians so greatly with prodigies and calamities that at last the king permits them to depart*. Pharoah soon pursues them, but the Israelites, by a great miracle, pass through the Red-sea with dry feet; yet not long after rebelling against God, their benefactor, they are carried round the Deserts of Arabia till all of them except Josua and Caleb, who continued faithful, are dead. In the fortieth year from the going forth Moses dies in Mount Nebo, and Joshua is appointed to succeed him, who led the people of Israel into the Promised Land. This closes the second period.

The posterity of Sem indeed continued in the worship of the true God; but about the time of Abraham the true knowledge of God began to be defaced. For the scripture declares, that Thara, father of Abraham, was addicted to idolatry. Abraham restored the injured worship of the Deity. Isaac, Jacob,

* It is worthy notice, that whilst the contest was only about changing water into blood, and causing animals, that were already created, to come up out of the waters, the Egyptian forcerers could do these things, though in a manner manifestly inferior to Moses; but as soon as the dust is converted into lice, they are themselves astonish'd, and own the finger of God, which seems to prove that their attempts were only the effects of art; but that the power of Moses was really divine.

Joseph

TO UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

63

Joseph follows his steps. But principally Moses, who promulgated the law to the Israelites that was dictated by the Lord in Mount Sinai, which established the sacred and civil rights of the people. Hence he is called the chief law-giver of the Israelites. Among the ecclesiastical affairs of this period these two are principally to be regarded. 1. Circumcision instituted by Abraham. 2. The written law promulgated by Moses.

THE THIRD PERIOD OF SACRED HISTORY.

The third period begins with the going forth of the Israelites out of Egypt in 2513, extends to the times of the kings, and includes 396 years. In this period, the people of Israel were governed first by their leaders, Moses and Joshua, then by the elders, and after that by judges.

They were extraordinary magistrates whose duty it was to defend the people of God against his enemies, to pronounce the law, and take care of divine worship.

The judges of the people of Israel were,

- | | | | |
|------|-------------|----------------|-------|
| | 1. Athniel. | 4. Deborah and | xiii. |
| xiv. | 2. Ehud. | Gedeon. | |
| | 3. Samgar. | 5. Abimelech. | |

F

6. Thola

- | | | |
|------|----------------------------|-------------|
| | 6. Thola and Jair. | 9. Sampson. |
| xii. | 7. Jephtha. | 10. Eli. |
| | 8. Ebzan, Elon, and Abdon. | 11. Samuel. |

The most remarkable of the judges were,

- | | |
|------------|--|
| a. C. | 1. Deborah, a heroine, who with Barak defeated Sisarah *, king Jabin's general. |
| xiii. | 2. Gedeon, who succeeded in the war against the Midianites. |
| | 3. Abimelech, a famous tyrant, who, having slain seventy brothers, reigned three years. |
| xii. a. C. | 4. Sampson, who was favoured by heaven with such great strength, that he tore a lion he met in the way with his hand, and slew a thousand Philistines with the jaw-bone of an ass. At length, he is captivated by the wiles of a woman, who delivers him up to the Philistines. They put out his eyes, and bring him forth as a spectacle, when with his hands he pulls down the pillars that sustained the edifice in which the great men were assembled for festivity and sports, and buries them and himself in one general ruin. |

* It is in the Latin, *Dobora una cum Barach occidit Siseram*; but it was Jael, the wife of Heber, who slew him, by driving a nail into his temples whilst he slept. It was a treacherous act, for there was peace between Jabin and Heber's house, and Sisera was invited to take shelter in the tent of Jael. For this action however, as it was an instance of courage and resolution, was she celebrated, in a Jewish military ode, *above women IN THE TENT*. After this the land had rest 40 years.

This

This happened in the twentieth year of his magistracy*.

* This fine history of Sampson, in which there is so much of justice and nature, and human passion, and female artifice, on account of the extraordinary achievements of the Jewish hero, has been treated as a fable. But his uncommon strength was not more singular than the occasion for which it was given. They were both alike extraordinary. And if there is no other instance of equal force bestow'd on man, it is not sufficient to destroy the credibility of this relation. If we had known no more of Newton, than that he had discovered the true system of the universe, the laws of Heaven, and the transit of comets, and this upon the testimony of others, knowing nothing of his writings, and unable to pursue the same discoveries for want of his clue, perhaps it would not be less difficult to believe so great an exertion of mind in this case, as of bodily strength in the other. Some amazing instances of strength were exerted by Augustus, late King of Poland, and many more by others of a later date, which, if they were collected, might in time seem equally incredible with those of Sampson. But if credit may be given to such exertion of natural strength now, where is the difficulty of allowing this superior strength in a man endow'd with extraordinary powers from Heaven, and whose history has such sanction as that of the Old Testament to confirm it. But after all, if there should be some relations in the historical part of that book, which the reader, for want of conversing much with those writings, and not considering the state of the old world, cannot immediately believe to be genuine, let him be very cautious how he proceeds to deny other parts of Scripture, and particularly the prophecies, upon the truth of which the religion of Jesus so manifestly depends. It may not be amiss to observe here, that there is no necessity in what is said of the foxes and the fire-brands to render the original word foxes, it also signifying wheat-sheaves. Some other parts of this history have been rendered less marvellous in the memoirs of literature, publish'd by la Roche.

xii. a. C.

5. Samuel, a most excellent magistrate, and very famous for his prophecies. He was the last of the judges, for after his time the people grew sick of too much liberty, and would have a king to govern them*.

The elders being extinct who had presided over the Republic for some years, the people of Israel fell off from the worship of the true God to the adoration of idols, hence forsaken of God†, they are oppressed by Chushan, king of Mesopotamia, with eight years bondage. On their repentance Athniel is given them as an avenger, who having oppressed Chushan, restored the people to their liberty. But after the death of Athniel, returning to their impiety again, they are severely punished for their ingratitude. This whole history exhibits remarkable instances of Jewish inconstancy, and shews that their religious cult varied as events were prosperous or otherwise to the Israelites.

THE FOURTH PERIOD OF SACRED HISTORY.

The fourth period begins in the year of the world 2909, or from the beginning of

* According to Sir Isaac Newton, Samuel judged Israel about 1100 years before Christ.

† Or rather they having forsaken God, for God never forsakes his creatures, though they too often forsake him.

the government by kings to the end of the Babylonish captivity, or 3468th year of the world, and includes 559 years*.

In the history of the kings is principally to be remarked the schism that happened in the time of Rehoboam, when the people, upon the defection of the ten tribes were divided into two parts, and thence into two distinct kingdoms, Judea and Israel.

Only three kings reigned over the whole people.

1. Saul, son of Cis, who ruled exceedingly ^{x1. a. C.} well in the beginning of his reign, but time producing a change in his behaviour, he is rejected of God †, and David appointed to succeed him.

2. David

* Saul was made king of Israel about 1069. Samuel died 1060, and David made king about 1059, and Solomon 1019 years before Christ. Newton's Chronology.

† Saul was afflicted with fits of melancholy, which often approached to madness: these are said to have been caus'd by an evil spirit, but by the cure prescrib'd, which was music, it is not improbable that this evil (or bad spirits, as they are now call'd) was no other than his melancholy.

Whatever has been said in support of witchcraft, from the story of the woman, said to have a familiar spirit at Endor, it is most certain, from the story, that Saul saw nothing of those apparitions the witch pretended to raise, for he asked her constantly what she saw; and when she at last tells him she saw a little old man in a mantle, Saul perceived not the man, but from the description alone perceived it to be Samuel. Cunning as she was she did not know Saul, till he told her he was able to protect her, and had desired to see Samuel; and considering how

AN INTRODUCTION

2. David conspicuous for his military skill, his piety, and gift of prophesy*. He besieged the tower of Sion, and made it the place of royal residence.

xi. a. C.

near she was to the armies, and that she could not but know the distresses of Saul, she might easily foretel his fate, without having recourse to the dead.

* That king David was a sinner is not to be disputed, that any sinner was ever more penitent may be doubted; but whilst the first is often objected to him, the latter is not always sufficiently regarded. How could the man, who caus'd the death of Uriah, be called the man after God's own heart? Whatever was his character in other respects, as a general he certainly answer'd the purposes of the Lord in appointing him successor in the place of Saul, who had been distressed and defeated by the Philistines, and in this sense it is that the Lord is said to have sought him a man after his own heart, a proper man to execute his designs upon his enemies, and whom therefore he commanded to be captain over his people, because Saul had not kept that which the Lord commanded him. 1 Sam. xiii. Besides the affair of Uriah did not happen till long after this declaration and appointment. And that perfect innocence was not necessarily required in the prophet, more than in the soldier, is evident from the story of the man of God, which had cried against the altar in Bethel, and disobeyed the orders he had received from the Lord at the instance of another old prophet, who is at first said to have lied unto him, and afterwards to have spoke the truth when the word of the Lord came unto him. See 1 Kings xiii. The prophet Jonas also sinned in not complying instantly with the orders he received from God. That David was a prophet is evident from his Psalms, and particularly from the 110th, when rightly translated. If his repentance is denied, his sins may also be denied, for the same history records both; and if we are to believe what is said of his repentance, we must acknowledge him to have been holy.

3. Solo-

3. Solomon, son of David, whom the scriptures declare to have been the wisest man in his time. He erected a most magnificent temple at Jerusalem. But as he advanced in years, ensnared by the allurements of wives and concubines, he is seduced to the worshipping of idols. An. 1012:

The ten tribes falling off from Rehoboam made choice of Jeroboam to be their king, so that Rehoboam and his successors governed only the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. From that time the kings of Judea are to be distinguished from those of Israel, and were as follow. a. C. An. 975:

KINGS OF JUDEA*. KINGS OF ISRAEL.

x. a. C.	1. Rehoboam	1. Jeroboam	x.
	reigned 17 years.	reigned 22 years.	
	2. Abia 3.	2. Nadab 2.	
	3. Afa 41.	3. Baasa 24.	
	4. Jehosaphat 25.	4. Ela 2.	
	5. Joram 8.	5. Zimri 7 days	
	6. Ahazia 1.	before Omri.	
	7. Athalia 6.	6. Omri 12 years.	
	8. Joash 40.	7. Ahab 22.	
	9. Amasiah 29.	8. Ahazia 2.	
	10. Uzziah 52.	9. Joram 12.	
VIII.	11. Jotham 16.	10. Jehu 28.	IX.

* I have here added the number of years each person reigned, taken from the Chronolgy of the learned Mr. Jackson.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 12. Ahaz 16. | 11. Jehoahaz 17. |
| 13. Hezekiah 29. | 12. Joesh 16. |
| 14. Manasses 55. | 13. Jeroboam 11 ^d . VIII. |
| 15. Amon 2. | 41 years. |
| 16. Josiah 31. | An interregnum of |
| 17. Jehoahaz 3 months. | 11 years. |
| 18. Jehoiachim 11. | 14. Zachariah 6 months. |
| 19. Jehoiachin three months, 10 days. | 15. Shallum 1 month. |
| 20. Zedekiah 11. | 16. Menahem 10 years. |
| | 17. Pekaiah 2. |
| | 18. Pekah 20. |
| | An anarchy for 9 years. |
| | 19. Hosea 9. |

Of these kings of Judah, the most remarkable in history were,

- x. a. C. 1. Rehoboam, who, from his inability to govern, gave occasion, as was observed before, for the division into two kingdoms.
- An. 975.
- vii. a. C. 2. Jehoiachim, who, being conquered by Nabuchodonosor, is carried away into captivity. From the time of his being carried away are reckoned the 70 years of Babylonish captivity.
- An. 606.
- vi. a. C. 3. Zedekiah, under whom Jerusalem was taken and destroyed, and the rest of the Jews carried into captivity.
- An. 587.

Among

Among the kings of the Israelites the most famous were,

1. Jeroboam, founder of the new kingdom x. a. C.
of Israel. An. 975.
2. Ahab, under whom flourished the prophet Elias.
3. Hosea, in whose reign the city of Samaria was besieged and taken by the Assyrians, viii. An. 721.
and the ten tribes of Israel carried away into captivity.

Under the first kings divine worship was celebrated after the ancient manner, confined to the ark and the tabernacle. But in the time of Solomon, when the temple was erected, that became the place of religious worship, and the tabernacle and the ark were deposited therein. Upon the division of the kingdoms, Jeroboam contrived a new cult, that the kingdoms, already divided might not be induced, on the score of religion, to unite again. As true religion often decayed, and the kings of Juda and of Israel, were prone to idolatry, God sent prophets, from time to time, to restore almost extinguished piety, sadly neglected by the priests; and as more than thirty prophets existed in this period, it may well deserve the name of the *prophetic æra*; for by them God manifested his good pleasure, which before was made known by oracles alone, called Urim and Thummim.

Upon the division of the Jewish name into two kingdoms, there were two royal seats,

seats, the one at Jerusalem, the other at Samaria, after the royal seat was removed to this city, which had before been in the city of Sichem. As to the form of government, scripture shews the whole Hebrew nation to have been in subjection to a king: and Samuel plainly sets forth, in describing the king's right*, that the people had no power left to relieve themselves against the injuries of a king. But it appears, that some part of the Theocracy subsisted even under the kings, who had not the power of determining in all matters, as not of the tribe, the high-priest and the prophet: for when the chiefs demanded the life of Jeremiah, the king answered——Behold he is in your power, for the king can do nothing against you.

The Hebrews were entirely given to agriculture, and are generally supposed to have neglected the liberal arts, but that architecture flourished with them is evident from the temple of Solomon. The quantity of gold and silver and foreign merchandize they had, in the time of David and Solomon, proves the Hebrews to have been very skilful then in the art of navigation. The most convenient

* It should have been oppression, not right, for Samuel is protesting against a change of their government, and declaring what kings in fact would do. Harken unto their voice (the voice of the people, says the Lord :) howbeit, yet protest solemnly unto them, and shew them the manner of the king that shall reign over them.
1 Sam. viii. 9.

ports for the Indian trade were the famed Eloth and Ezion-geber, which David held after he had subdued Idumæa. And that they had a very great regard for history appears from the historical monuments of the Old Testament.

THE FIFTH PERIOD OF SACRED HISTORY.

The space of time included in the fifth period amounts to three hundred and seventy-two years, from the year of the world 3468, that is, from the end of the Babylonish captivity, to the times of the Maccabees, or A. M. 3840.

The Babylonish captivity lasted seventy years, at the end of which, Cyrus, king of Persia, permitted them to return. Thus again restored to their own country, the Jews were governed by princes and pontifs.

The Jewish princes were,

1. Zerubbabel, who brought home the Jews VI. A. C. An. 536. to their own country. He, with the high-priest Joshua, having erected an altar, sacrificed to God for their deliverance. And in the second year after their return the Jews lay the foundations of the temple: but the work is interrupted by the calumnies of their adversaries, and renewed again in the reign of Darius Hystaspis.

2. Nehemiah,

2. Nehemiah, who inclosed Jerusalem with new-built walls, and committed to writing an account of what was done in Judea in his time. After the death of Nehemiah the supreme power devolved to the high-priests.

The Jews continued firm in the true worship of God, which is the more to be wondered at, seeing that in times past, when there was so great a harvest of prophets and of miracles, they so frequently stepped aside from the true religion. The cause of this perseverance is to be ascribed principally to the institution of synagogues and the frequent reading of the scriptures in them, by the particular diligence of Esdras, the priest, to whom, as one of the greatest and most useful of all his undertakings, we owe the collection, revision, and transcripts of the copies of the sacred books. By these means it was provided, that the knowledge of the scriptures, which before, on account of the few copies extant, and the neglect of continual reading of them, had often been almost obliterated, should be in no danger of any such misfortunes for the future. To this period we may in some measure also refer the rise and progress of the sect of the Samaritans. For Salmanazar having banished the ten tribes of Israel into Media, Babylonia, and other eastern provinces, sent new colonies made up of various nations into their vacant seats; they being infested with lions, the king of Assyria sent to them

them one of the Jewish priests a captive, from whom they learned to worship the God of the Hebrews, but confounded it with their own profane superstitions. This was the rise of the Samaritan cult, which at the beginning of this period, being reformed, came nearer to the Jewish religion, a temple being raised in Mount Garizim, chiefly by the labour of Manasses, a runaway Jew. Then began the gifts of prophecy to decrease, for this period produced no more than three, *viz.* Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi.

In this fifth period the Hebrews were not their own masters, being subject to the dominion of the Persians, and afterwards to that of the Greeks. Under the Persian monarchs they were treated with that clemency as to be made sensible of little difference between such subjection and liberty.

Under the Greeks they were sometimes oppressed with rigorous tyranny, particularly in the reign of Ptolomy Lagus, who carried off 100,000 Jews into slavery.

The Massorets arose in this period, those grammarians held sacred by the Jews, by whose care and labours the sacred text has been preserved incorrupt *. The Massorets
are

* More has been said in favour of these Masorets than they deserve. See the Prolegomena to Houbigant's Hebrew Bible; also p. 71, 72, of a Dissertation upon the Origin, &c. of Languages, and the Preface to the Hebrew

AN INTRODUCTION

are esteemed the first inventors † of the Hebrew dot-vowels and points, as it is probable the Hebrews read without them before the times of Esdras. In this period were written the book of Kings, Chronicles, Esdras, Nehemiah, Esther and Sirach, also the translation of the scriptures into Greek by learned Jews, commonly ascribed to seventy interpreters.

THE SIXTH PERIOD.

This period begins with the year of the world 3840, that is, with Judas Maccabæus, going on to the year 3964, as far as to Herod the Great, and contains 124 years.

11. a. C. Mattathias, surnamed Asmonæus, the first
An. 163. avenger of the Jewish liberty, was the first of the family of the Maccabees. He had three sons who succeeded him.

1. Judas, who fought, with great bravery and success at first, for the liberty of the

Hebrew Lexicon in the same Book, where it is demonstrated, that very little credit is due to Masoretic assertions.

† These dot-vowels were originally taken from the Arabians, who did not invent them till several years after Mohammed, for the first copies of the Koran were without them. As the Arabians have but three, the Jews at first contented themselves with two of them: but in Aben Ezra's time, about the middle of the twelfth century, they were increased to seven, and since that, of one kind or other, to about thirty. See second Dissertation upon the original Powers of Letters, &c. printed for John Millan, 1751.

Jews

TO UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

79

Jews against the Syrians, and having acquired immortal glory by his courage, he fell in the battle against Bacchides.

2. Jonathan, emulous of his brother's fortitude, after several egregious instances of valour, is at length slain by Tryphon.

3. Simon bravely sustained the liberty that had been obtained by arms, and renewed the league Jonathan had made with the Romans and Lacedemonians.

4. John Hyrcanus, who, having besieged and taken Samaria, rased their temple to the ground.

5. Aristobulus, who was the first that assumed the regal name and diadem.

6. Alexander Jannæus, who, being detested by the Jews, is by their hatred and animosities provoked to cruel revenge.

7. Salome, otherwise Alexandra, the widow of king Alexander, who wisely calmed the disturbances that had arisen in her husband's time: she was therefore much beloved by the people. 1. a. C.
An. 79.

8. Hyrcanus, in conjunction with his brother Aristobulus. The Jewish Republic was miserably shattered by dissentions under their administration, till Pompey, taking Jerusalem, An. 63. carried Aristobulus to Rome.

9. Antigonus, son of Aristobulus, who, by the help of the Parthians, sent his uncle Hyrcanus without his ears into Parthia. But Herod soon after ruined Antigonus, and An. 37.
trans-

transferred the government from the Asmonean family to his own, as will soon be shewn.

Under the Asmoneans, started up the sects of the Pharisees and Sadducees, those brands and fuel of the disturbances that followed; particularly in the reign of Alexander Jannæus, who, being addicted to the sect of the Sadducees, cruelly persecuted that of the Pharisees. But in general the sect of the Pharisees took the lead, both in respect of the superiority of number, and on account of their feigned piety, which greatly recommended them to the people. They were the most strenuous assertors of Jewish traditions. The Sadducees were inferior in number, but, supported by the favour of the kings, princes, and nobles, gave no small trouble to the Pharisees; and rejected their superstitious traditions, which drew over to their sect all that were of a more elegant turn. The denial of the resurrection of the dead is reckoned one of the impious doctrines of the Sadducees. In this period should be placed the origin of the Hellenists, a name given to all the Jews dispersed through Greece and other parts, who read the Greek version of the scriptures in their synagogues, but in no other respect differed from the cult of the Hebrews, by whom, however, they were hated, particularly from the time that Onias built a temple at Heliopolis in Egypt, called the temple of Onias, and which remained till

till the time of Vespasian. In this view only they were judged to be heretics by the other Jews, who inhabited Palestine, who held, that God could no where be rightly worshipped but in Jerusalem only. But the Hellenists had their synagogues in Judea, and even in Jerusalem, as we find in the Acts of the apostles. Of the Therapeutæ, or Essenes, I shall speak hereafter. The Jewish church increased amazingly in this period, by the accession of proselytes, some of whom admitted of circumcision in common with the other Jews, and were called proselytes of justice; but others, who, regardless of rites and ceremonies, worshipped the God of the Hebrews, were called proselytes of the Gate.

The institution of the grand Senate, or Sanhedrim is referred to this period, which consisted of such elders as were remarkable for their skill and prudence, by whose authority the power of the Asmonean kings and princes were restrained within certain limits; notwithstanding which it appears that some of them governed absolutely enough, especially after the office of the priesthood was annexed to the government.

There were innumerable synagogues, including schools and colleges for literature under the Maccabees. Then were published the books of the Maccabees, and the book of Wisdom.

G

THE

THE SEVENTH PERIOD. OF THE
HERODIAN FAMILY.

This period begins with Herod the great, A. M. 3964, and reaches to the destruction of Jerusalem, or the 70th year after the birth of Christ, containing 106 years.

The kings and princes of the family of Herod were,

I. a. C.
An. 37.

I. Herod, surnamed the Great, a very crafty man, who, having artfully secured the favour of the Roman emperors, is by their means lifted up to the highest honours, and, although a foreigner, being by birth an Idumæan, is created king of the Jews*. He either restored the temple from its foundation,

* At first he sided with Brutus and Cassius, but after their death, in A. U. C. 712, he came over to Antony, who made him governor of Judea, and by order of the senate, king of the Jews; but after the defeat of Antony at Actium, in 723, he turned about to Augustus, who confirmed his titles, and afterwards added three more provinces to his dominion, because he had erected a theatre, and established Quinquennial Games in honour of the Roman emperor. He was one of the most cruel tyrants in the world, murdering his own offspring, their mothers, and his best friends. Josephus has given an ample catalogue of his cruelties, excepting the murder of the innocents, which however is related by Macrobius, the Jewish author of the Toldoth Jesu, published by Huldric, and Sixtus Senensis says he read it in Dion Cassius, but it is not in any of our copies, all of which want that part of his history. This Herod died, in great misery, of a dysentery and a dropsy in the lower belly, which bred worms.

or else adorned it in so costly a manner, that it was esteemed one of the most stupendous works of that age. In other respects his reign was cruel, for he put to death Mariamne, his wife, and her mother Alexandra: and, at last, growing more outrageously cruel every day, he kills the sons he had by Mariamne, who were falsely accused by their brother Antipater.

2. After the death of Herod the great, ^{I. a. C.} ^{An. 3.} the kingdom was divided between Herod Antipas and his brothers Archelaus and Philip. Each division was called a Tetrarchy, or fourth part, and the brothers governed under the title of Tetrarchs. The wife of Herod Antipas was Herodias, by whose persuasion ^{Ist century after C.} John the baptist was beheaded*. In these times Christ suffered.

3. Herod the third, or Agrippa the elder, who, by the favour of the Romans, was declared prince of all Judea; he was an ex-

* Antipas was married to the daughter of Aretas king of the Arabians, but he divorced her, and took Herodias, who was his brother's wife, by force, and married her. He was often defeated by Aretas, who carried on a war against him to revenge the injustice done his family. Caligula banished him to Lyons, A. D. 56, for rebellion, and there he and Herodias died miserably. This was the Herod to whom Pilate sent our blessed Lord. Archelaus was a cruel man, and hated by the Jews. He put 3000 men to death for a sedition that happened upon his punishing some men, who had pulled down a golden eagle from the portal of the temple. Upon the complaints of his people he was banished by Augustus to Vienna in the tenth year of his administration.

cellent and a prudent governor, but is blamed for the death of the apostle James.

4. Herod the fourth, or Agrippa the younger, governed under the emperor Claudius, who annexed Judea once more to Syria.

An. 70.

5. Herod Agrippa, in whose time Jerusalem was besieged and taken, and together with the temple utterly destroyed.

In this period frequent mention is made of the Pharisees, Sadducees, Essenes, Scribes and Herodians. The Pharisees are so called from their separation, separating themselves from the rest of the people. The Sadducees, from Saddoch, the chief of their sect; but of these before. The origin of the Essenes is very uncertain. They were plain men, unmarried, contempters of pleasures, and took their name from contemplation, meditating on heavenly things. Some take the Scribes to be the same as the Karaites, who rejecting the traditions and fables of the Pharisees, submit only to the light of Scripture. The Herodians, so often mentioned in the New Testament, are, as some think *, so called from their having embraced the religion of Herod the Great, accommodating themselves to the times, that they might not arm the Romans against them by shewing too great a zeal for religion,

* Others think they were called Herodians, because they acknowledged Herod to be the Messiah. It is very evident, from Pagan as well as Jewish authors, that the Eastern world did about that time expect a DELIVERER.

and therefore were not less hated by the Jews than if they had been Heathens. The Jewish church was miserably disturbed by these dissensions and different interpretations of the Scriptures. Herod himself, a constant flatterer of the Roman emperors, often scoffed at the Jewish religion, and made and unmade high-priests at pleasure.

Such was the increase of doctors, and so great the number of academies, that no less than 300 synagogues were reckoned in the city of Jerusalem only. Amongst the more famous rabbies were Hillel senior and Schammai.

Having thus finished these remarks upon ancient Sacred History, we now come to Universal History as comprehended under four great empires.

THE HISTORY OF THE FOUR MONARCHIES.

In attempting to illustrate universal history, when the affairs of so many different nations are to be related, we launch out at once into a boundless ocean: but that we may avoid those rocks others have split upon, who, whilst they were endeavouring to omit nothing, have perplexed and confounded the memory of young students, we have determined to act like a ship in a storm, and throw overboard some of the goods rather

than be cast away. Passing over many things, we shall therefore confine ourselves to certain bounds, and be contented with observing what the beginner ought to learn: and as four great empires, which for their excellence are called monarchies, include the strength and marrow of all history, we shall proceed in like manner as above to describe the rise and progress of these four monarchies.

1. The Assyrian. 2. The Persian. 3. Grecian. And 4. Roman.

Belus is placed at the head of the series of Assyrian kings, who reigned at Babylon, and is by profane authors esteemed the founder of it. There are who believe him to be the same the Scriptures call Nimrod. As profane history does not go higher than him, he is supposed to have been the first monarch in the world*.

The

* According to Sir Isaac Newton, who widely differs from other Chronologers, Pul (Bel or Belus) founded the walls and the palaces of Babylon, and left the city with the province of Chaldea to his younger son Nabonassar, who finished what his father began, and erected the temple of Jupiter Belus to his father. Semiramis lived in those days, and was Nabonassar's queen; but whether she continued to reign after her husband's death may be doubted.

Ninus or Niniveh and Babylon, and other cities were founded either by Nimrod or Assur, and not by Ninus, the feigned son of Belus, who was succeeded at Nineveh by (Tiglath-pul-assur) Tiglath-pileser and at Babylon by his younger son Nabonassar.

In

The principal assyrian kings after Belus were,
 1. Ninus, who built Niniveh, and removed the seat of the empire to it. He was the first who, for the sake of extending his empire, made war upon other nations. Having reduced Asia, he at last subdues the Bactrians, with their king Zoroaster. After this he espouses Semiramis, has a son called Ninyas by her, and dies.

2. Semiramis, a queen of heroic mind, who disguising her sex, took possession of the kingdom instead of her son. The authors of the Grecian annals say it was she that built Babylon. It will be nearer the truth to say she enlarged it, and surrounded it with a wall of wonderful extent, 480 furlongs. She attacked Asia, Media, Persia, Egypt, Libya, and even India, with armed force. But at last is killed by her son, for having solicited him to commit incest with her.

3. Ninyas, who having slain his mother, took possession of the kingdom, greatly enlarged by his parents. He was a very slothful man, seldom seen, and grew old in the company of his concubines.

In the reign of Sennacherib and Asserhadon the Assyrian empire seems arrived at its greatness. Asserhadon seems to be Sardanapalus, (Asarhadan-pul) the son of Sennacherib. Asserhadon died in the year of Nabonassar 81. Saosduchinus his successor in 101. Chyniladon in 123. Nabopolassar in 144, and Nebuchadnezzar, in 187. Newton's Chronology.

AN INTRODUCTION

4. Sardanapalus, the last of the Assyrian monarchs, more effeminate than a woman. When Arbactus, governor of Media, beheld him setting in the midst of his women, twirling the distaff, and spinning of purple, he was moved with indignation to be employed under a woman, and made war against him, and frightened him, and reduced him to such distresses, that in despair he burnt himself with his riches, and both perished together in the flames.

a. C.
IX. OR
VIII.

VIII.

VII.

An. 606.

After the death of Sardanapalus, the Assyrian empire was split into three several kingdoms, viz. the Median, Assyrian, and Babylonian. The first king of the Median kingdom was Arbaces, of whom above. This kingdom lasted till the time of Astyages, who was subdued and divested of his kingdom by Cyrus. The metropolis of Media was Ecbatana, as was Niniveh of the Assyrian empire; and the first king was Phul, succeeded by Tiglathpileser, Salmanassar, Sennacherib, and at last by Assarhadon, who took possession of the kingdom of Babylon; but after his death the Assyrian kingdom became subject to the Medes and Babylonians who destroyed Niniveh. The principal city of the Babylonian kingdom, and where the kings resided, was Babylon. The most famous of the kings of Babylon was Nebuchadnesar, who subdued almost all the East. The last king was Darius the Mede, but he

he being conquered by Cyrus king of Persia, the Babylonians submitted to the Persians. Thus, in the time of Cyrus, there arose a new and second monarchy, called the Persian*.

Amongst those things that occurred most worthy notice in other kingdoms which flourished in the time of the first monarchy,

Egypt principally claims our admiration, on account of its multitude of inhabitants and cities, the cultivation of arts, the fertility of its land, and, lastly, for the stupendous piles of edifices, which exceed all our belief: for according to Diodorus the Sicilian, the Egyptians anciently had 18000 cities; the chief of them was the city of the Sun (called by the Greeks Thebes) whose walls were 140 furlongs in circumference. Busiris the founder adorned it with great buildings, and other very fair ornaments; and it appears, that not only this king, but others who succeeded him, bestowed many decorations upon it to increase its magnificence, and particularly statues and obelisks of one entire stone, so that no city under the sun was so richly adorned as this. How great this city was in other respects, may be determined from its hundred gates. Of all

* For the history of the second Assyrian Kingdom, see the learned Dr. Prideaux's *Old and New Testament Connected*. Vol. I. Book 1st and 2d.

the amazing works of the Egyptians, the pyramids and the labyrinth deserve the first place. "According to Mr. Greaves the whole Area of the first Pyramid covers a space of more than eleven acres. The North side accurately measures 693 feet: the perpendicular height is 493 feet: the real ascent is equal to the latitude of the base, or 693 feet *." It is said 360,000 men were employed in this work, which they scarcely completed in 20 years. But the sepulchre built by king Miris, called the labyrinth, deserves our highest admiration, being stupendous not only for its vastness, but for its almost inimitable contrivance, for those that entered could not easily find their way back again without an experienced guide.

Next to the Egyptians the Phœnicians were the most celebrated. They were the most expert in maritime affairs. Their chief city was Tyre, the greatest emporium in the world.

ix. a. C. The most noted of their kings was Pygmalion, whose sister Dido built Carthage.

The kingdom of the Lydians flourished under the first monarchy, chiefly in the time of Cræsus, whose dominion extended far

vii. a. C. and wide over Asia, and who was esteemed the richest king of his time.

* I have here taken the liberty to insert the note of the former edition instead of the text where our author measures the Pyramids by ells and acres. *Strabo* gives the measure of them in acres.

TO UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

91

This age produced Homer, Hesiod *, Æsop, and the seven wise men of Greece. To this period must the Sibyls † be referred,

* Sir Isaac Newton says, Hesiod flourished about 870 years before Christ. This he determines, amongst other arguments, from what Hesiod himself has said concerning the rising of the star Arcturus sixty days after the winter solstice just at sun-set. Much has been said against this great man's chronology, from a calculation prefixed to a late edition of Hesiod; but it is there confessed, that " Sir Isaac may have entered upon the calculation in a different manner from the author of that calculation, approaching nearer to the North, computing sixty days from the middle of winter and leaving out the extremes. But as the author himself is silent upon the matter, I find nothing certain to say about it." His words in Latin are these :

Quid igitur sibi voluit Newtonus, qui Arcturi exortum *ἀνατολὴν* et VERUM ex sententia poetæ hoc anno evenisse nos docuit! Num falsus fuit (absit invidia verbo) clariss. ille vir, cujus nomini honos semper est habendus? An diversâ methodo inivit calculum, pro regione ad Boream magis accedente, computatis sexaginta diebus à medio Brumæ tempore, et exclusis numero extremis? De hac re tacente ipso auctore, nihil certi, quod dicam invenio.

† There is nothing certain concerning the name, number, history, or works of these women. The Romans had books called Sibylline, which they consulted as divine oracles upon particular occasions; and the answer drawn from these writings always directed them to the performance of some thing egregiously superstitious. The office of consulting these sacred leaves was first committed to two persons called the duumviri, afterwards to ten, decemviri; then to fifteen, and at last to forty, though called by the name quindecimviri. The punishment for divulging them was very severe, the criminal being sentenced to be put into a sack with a serpent, and thrown into the sea. The books now published under the name of the Sibylline oracles are manifest forgeries.

Women

Women famous for their prophecies. Philosophy flourished in Egypt, astronomy in Chaldaea. All true lovers of philosophy therefore flocked to Egypt as to the true seat of wisdom and the muses, and no man was believed to be really wise and knowing who had not been instructed by the Egyptian priests who were philosophers. The Phœnicians excelled in sea affairs, and the most noted cities of Niniveh and Babylon shew that the Assyrians and Chaldeans were very expert in architecture and mechanics.

Niniveh, the metropolis of Assyria, is said to have been built by Assur, or Ninus, on the banks of the Tigris. Thus the holy Scriptures declare in these words, Gen. x. 11. Out of that land went forth Assur, and builded Niniveh. Diodorus the Sicilian gives us a great idea of it, when he says, the wall that surrounded it was 480 furlongs in compass. No city, it is thought, was ever built of such circumference, or like magnificence of edifices. The height of the walls was 100 feet, the breadth sufficient to admit three chariots to pass at the same time. The Scripture, speaking of its magnitude, says, Niniveh was a great city, a journey of three days. It was destroyed under Sardanapalus by Arbaces or Arbaces. Babylon, built either by Belus or Semiramis, but improved with so much art and such expence by Nabuchodonosor, as to become one of the wonders of the world

A city.

A city built on both sides of the Euphrates, surrounded by a wall, on which were many towers, 480 furlongs in circumference; so magnificent a work, that on the breadth of it six chariots and horses might set out together; the height was 350 feet*. There were 100 gates all of brass with doors and hinges, in the circuit. The city was filled with houses of three and four stories. Near the citadel were the horti penfiles, or hanging gardens, made by one of the kings in favour of his concubine, who, being a Persian by birth, was desirous of seeing meadows on mountains as in her own country, and prevailed upon him to raise an artificial garden, which with trees and meadows might resemble Persia. Vaulted arches were raised from the ground one above another, increasing always in grandure, to support the vast weight of the whole garden.

Thus much for the splendor and greatness of Niniveh and Babylon, and to give an idea of the magnificence of the ancients.

* See Dr. Prideaux's Connect. Vol. I. pag 74, 75. fol. edit. It may be observed here that the first wall of Babylon built by Belus was in compass 360 furlongs to represent the days of the old chaldean year: but Nebuchadnezzar built the outer wall of 480 furlongs. See Jackson's Chronol. Antiq. Vol. I. pag. 276.

OF THE SECOND MONARCHY, viz. THE PERSIAN.

This monarchy stood upwards of 200 years, from Cyrus, whose reign began A. M. 3468, to Darius Codomannus, who being conquered by Alexander, the empire was translated to the Greeks, A. M. 3674.

- VI. A. C. 1. The first monarch was Cyrus*, founder of the empire, a prince who merited the highest applause, and procured the return of the Jews into their own country. After he had reigned long with the greatest glory, he made war at last against a people of Scythia, called the Massagetæ, by whom he was defeated and slain, and, by order of Tomyris their queen, his head was cut off and put into a vessel filled with human blood; at the same time she scoffed him, saying, Siate thyself with blood now, of which before thou wert insatiable. Others, among whom is Xenophon, report, that he died happily, and was with great magnificence interred at

* According to Sir Isaac Newton in his chronology, Cyrus overcomes Darius the Mede, translates the empire to the Persians, and the Jews return from captivity, and found the second temple 536 years before christ. Cyrus dies, and Cambyfes reigns 529 years before Christ. Xenophon wrote a fine book of the education of this prince, and Theoderet says, that Daniel shewed him his name in Isaiah.

Babylon;

Babylon; and in the history of Alexander the VI. a. C. Great, mention is made of his sepulchre.

2. Cambyfes, the son of Cyrus, who subdued Egypt, successor to his father's kingdom, not his virtues, for he filled every place with blood and slaughter. At length he is wounded by his own sword, as it happened to be without the scabbard, and dies*.

3. Smerdis. Cambyfes had a brother of the name of Smerdis, whom he had killed a little before his own death. One of the Magi pretended to be this brother, and ruled in his name as successor to Cambyfes; but the fraud being detected, seven of the nobles of Persia enter into a confederacy and kill him.

4. Darius, the son of Hystaspis †. The Magus being slain, Darius Hystaspis, one of the seven conspirators, by the contrivance of his groom, Oebaris, and the neighing of his horse, obtained the kingdom. He took and destroyed the most magnificent city of Baby-

* Valerius Maximus records a remarkable instance of severity inflicted by him upon an unjust judge, ordering him to be flayed alive and his skin to be spread over the seat of justice, and his son to take the father's place and be the first to sit upon it. This Cambyfes was mad, and in his rage slew his brother and died mad. He reigned eight years including the five months of Smerdis.

† Darius Hystaspis reigns 521 years before Christ. In 520 the second temple built at Jerusalem, by the command of Darius and finished and dedicated in 515. Newton. He reigned 36 years. The reign of this king and of Cambyfes are determined by three eclipses recorded by Ptolomy.

lon,

lion, which had rebelled against him; and not long after he undertook an expedition into Scythia, in which he was unfortunate and unsuccessful. At last, waging war with the Greeks, he suffered a great slaughter, his whole army being cut off by the Athenians, commanded by Miltiades.

v. a. C.

5. Xerxes *, son of Darius by Atossa, daughter of Cyrus, succeeded his father. He, to revenge the slaughter made by the Athenians, marched into Greece with a prodigious army, consisting, as is said, of 1,700,000 foot, and 80,000 horse; but being vanquished by Themistocles, the Athenian general, at the battle of Salamis, he is frightened, and escapes in a small fishing-boat, and returns home, leaving 300,000 soldiers, under the command of Mardonius, to conquer Greece, which army was not long after entirely destroyed at the city Platæa by Pausanias, the Spartan general. Xerxes returning from this unhappy expedition, was despised by his own people, and at last slain by Artabanus, one of his own guards.

v. a. C.

6. Artaxerxes Longimanus †, who made war with the Egyptians, at that time in rebellion under their new king, supported by the Athenian powers; having reduced them,

* 485 before Christ Xerxes reigns. 480 The passage over the Hellespont into Greece, and battles of Thermopylæ and Salamis. N.

† Reigned 464 years before Christ.

he made peace with the Greeks, in consequence of which the Grecian cities, that were in Lesser Asia, obtained their freedom.

7. Xerxes the second, who was killed by his brother Ochus.

8. Ochus, or Darius, called Nothus *, the bastard, being born of a concubine.

9. Artaxerxes Mnemon †, so named from the excellence of his memory. He was a king that greatly studied peace, and by art endeavoured to weaken the powers of Greece, sowing seeds of dissention amongst them. There broke out a war between him and his brother Cyrus, an excellent prince, who fell in battle, fighting with great bravery.

10. Artaxerxes Ochus ‡, the son of Mnemon, a cruel tyrant, who beheaded in one day the surviving 80 brothers, and surpassed all the Persian kings in cruelty, at last he perished by the contrivance of Bagoas the eunuch. iv. a. C.

11. Arses §, killed by the contrivance of the same Bagoas.

12. Darius Codomannus ||, who being defeated by Alexander the Great in three

* Reigned 424 before Christ. N.

† 405 years before Christ. N.

‡ 359 before Christ. N.

§ 338 before Christ. N.

|| 336 before Christ. The empire conquered by Alexander 332, and Darius slain 331 before Christ. N.

H battles,

An. 331.

battles*, is at last deprived both of his kingdom and his life. He was the last of the kings of Persia, the dominion of which after his death, was translated to the Greeks.

The Persian monarchs, though they were masters of all Asia, and of Egypt, yet as often as they directed their arms against the Scythians and Greeks, were not only forced to withdraw without being able to do any thing, but could scarcely defend themselves in Asia against the latter, grown big with their victories. The later kings therefore, made wise by the defeat of Darius Hystaspis and Xerxes, avoided every occasion of going to war with the Greeks, contenting themselves with artfully promoting dissentions as they arose in the Grecian cities, and breaking their powers by assisting the weak against the more powerful. All the Persian kings most diligent observers of this rule, by the use they made of the Greeks, often gave the law to them. When therefore the power of the Lacedemonians grew so great, that, Greece being

* The first was that of the Granicus, in which the Persians were entirely routed. In the second, near to Mount Taurus, Darius lost his wife, his mother, and his children, with his army, and with difficulty escaped himself, and after another defeat at Arbela, he fled to Media, and was put to death by Bessus, governor of the province of Bactria. Two years after Bessus was taken and sent to Alexander, who delivered him up to the brother of Darius, and he cut off his nose and ears, and nailed him to a cross for the soldiers to shoot at.

in

in peace, they undertook an expedition into Asia under the command of Agesilaus, the Persians sent a weighty power of Gold into Greece, by which the orators of their states being corrupted, the Thebans, Athenians and others are armed against the Lacedæmonians. Which done, Agesilaus, solicitous to preserve his own country, is forced from a course of victories to hasten back to Europe, and soon after to conclude an ignominious peace with the Persians. Darius Codomannus, either ignorant of, or unhappily despising this art, drew the united strength of Greece upon him. Hence it was that all Asia was soon subdued by the Macedonians, and an end put to the Persian monarchy.

The literati in Persia were then divided into two sects, the Sabæans and the Magi; of which sometimes the one, sometimes the other, were uppermost. The Sabæans, according to the report of Maimonides, held the stars to be Gods, and the sun to be the chief God, because he governed both the upper and the lower world. They also worshipped idols and images. All worshippers of images therefore were of old comprehended under the name of Sabæans; but the Magi, rejecting all image-worship, adored the sun under the form of fire as the supreme Deity. These prevailed by turns in Persia. Such was the state of religion until the time of Zoroaster, who did not indeed contrive a

new religion, but rendered the doctrine of the Magi more sublime and pure, and with such success, that he drew most of the nobles, and even the kings of Persia to adopt his sect *. Zoroaster flourished in the time of Darius Hystaspis.

THE THIRD MONARCHY, viz. THE GRECIAN.

Greece was anciently divided into several little republics, each having different laws and institutes peculiar to themselves. Amongst these, in course of time, Athens became most eminent, whose inhabitants excelled all others in eloquence, knowledge of arts, and polite-

* This religion of the Persian empire was composed partly of the institutions of the Chaldeans, in which Zoroastres was well skilled; and partly of the institutions of the ancient Brachmans, who are supposed to derive even their name from the Abrahamans, or sons of Abraham, born of his second wife Ketarah, instructed by their father in the worship of one God without images, and sent into the East, where Hystaspes was instructed by their successors. About the same time with Hystaspes and Zoroastres lived also Oftanes, another eminent Magus. He came into Greece with Xerxes, and seems to be the Otanes who discovered Smerdis, and was exempt from subjection to Darius. N. Read his story in Herodotus.

From the later superstitions and pretended prognostications of the Magi, the words Magi and Magia came to signify conjurors and conjuring, and from the false Smerdis, who had no ears, came the expression of Crop the Conjuror.

TO UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

161

ness of manners. But the commonwealth growing vain with too much prosperity and success, when she would have treated her subjects and allies roughly, brought upon herself the envy and hatred of almost all Greece. This gave rise to the Peloponnesian war, when the Peloponnesians and others, to tame the insolence of the Athenians, took up arms under the guidance and auspices of the Spartans. The war was carried on for a long time with equal fortune, till at last the Athenians, being broken by a great slaughter at the river Ægos, are forced to bend their necks to the Spartan yoke. v. a. C:
An. 431.

Sparta was next in renown to Athens, famous for the discipline of its law-giver Lycurgus, by which she was rendered very expert in military affairs, so that the Spartans were for a long while deemed invincible; but elated with too great prosperity and success, they fell into the same madness that had proved fatal to the Athenians, for they not only dared to attempt the reduction of all Greece, but to attack the king of Persia with their arms. Thus they armed all Greece against them, and being broken by several defeats, and particularly in the battle of Leuctra, they were at last scarce able to defend their own city. iv. a. C.
An. 371.

After these two common-wealths Thebes lifted up its head, principally renowned for the valour and prudence of Epaminondas.

iv. a. C. For he, together with Pelopidas, so quickened and informed the dull Beotians, who were by way of ridicule called Hogs, that having humbled the haughty pride of Sparta, they for some time took the lead in Greece. But when Epaminondas was dead, the state gradually relapsed into its original sluggishness, and rising against the Macedonians was utterly destroyed.

An. 335.

But whilst the Grecian states were in continual war for superiority, the kingdom of Macedonia, before obscure and contemptible, now grew so great by the management of the most artful king Philip, as to contrive fetters for all Greece. So small was the power of the Macedonians, especially in the beginning of Philip's reign, that they could hardly bear up against their neighbours and some the least respectable nations. But this brave and prudent king subjugated the barbarous nations that bordered upon Macedonia quicker than could have been conceived, by assisting the weak against the strong, and soon after attacking the Grecian states by the same arts, set them at variance amongst themselves, till worn out with mutual hostilities he subdued them all. Greece therefore conquered and at peace, he is declared general of the armies against the Persians, but as he was preparing for this expedition

An. 336.

he is killed by his own subjects, leaving the glory

glory of executing this business to his son Alexander.

Most of the Grecian states were free, and had privileges of their own; some were under a popular government, others under the dominion of the nobles; and in this the Athenians differed greatly from the Spartans, for when the former had set any state at variance with itself, turning out the nobility they put the administration into the hands of the whole people, whilst the latter set aside the popular state, and restored the nobles. But although most of the Grecian cities lived under their own laws, they were nevertheless held together by some common tie, as if they had been one commonwealth. Thus all Greece had one general senate, called the Amphiſtyonic council*, whose decrees all were obliged to observe and execute. So that in Greece at that time, there was a system of confederate cities, not unlike what at present

* A general council or Diet of Greece, said to have been instituted by Amphiſtyon son of Deucalion. It was first assembled in Thessaly, near Thermopylæ, and from the place called Pylæa, and the members were called Pylagoræ. It was afterwards removed by Acrisius, king of Argos, to Delphi, which lying in the middle of Greece, the Delegates of the twelve cities were more easily convened. They met in Spring and Autumn, or oftener, to decide any differences between any of their cities. Whoever rejected their determinations were considered as the enemies of Greece.

subsists between the Cantons of Switzerland and the confederate states of Holland.

Greece, and particularly Athens, produced in this age almost all that art could contrive, or the force of human wit conceive *. Then flourished Anaxagoras, Socrates, Herodotus, Thucydides, Xenophon, Plato, Isocrates, Lysias, Aristotle, Diogenes, Demosthenes, and many more, besides the most celebrated artificers, painters, sculptors, whose inimitable performances posterity yet admires.

iv. a. C. Thebes being demolished, and all Greece in peace, an expedition is undertaken against Persia, than which nothing can be found more glorious, more illustrious in history; for Alexander, with a handful of men subduing so many and so great nations, extended his victorious arms from the Hellespont to the Indies. He defeated Darius in three battles. 1. At the river Granicus. 2. In the Straits of Cilicia. And 3. At the city of Arbela or Gaugamela, where Plutarch says, Darius had 1,000,000 men in his army. Darius overcome in so many engagements, is basely cut off by Bessus, general of the Bactrians, at the time he was mustering up new forces

* So little is said of the history of Greece, in this Abridgment, and so much room would be taken up in supplying the defect, that the Editor chuses rather to refer the reader to his friend the late learned Mr. Stanyan's Grecian History, than to give him perpetual extracts out of it.

for another war, the cause of the destruction of the Persian empire is ascribed no less to the prowess of Alexander and the invincible strength of the Macedonians, than the excessive eagerness of Darius. For neglecting the maxims of his predecessors, Darius did not protract the war, and break and weaken the enemy in his march. The death of Memnon of Rhodes was therefore deemed an irreparable loss to the Persian empire: for in the opening of the war he was to have passed into Greece with men and money, to have armed the states against one another, but he died too soon. The fruits of this most glorious expedition perished with Alexander. IV. a. C. An. 323. For he dying in the flower of his age and without heirs, the Macedonian chiefs entered into cruel wars with one another, during which, those nations that were to the east of Euphrates falling under the dominion of the Parthians produced at length a very great kingdom. From the other kingdoms and provinces subdued by Alexander, proceeded four separate kingdoms, which flourished long under their own kings of Macedonian race.

As Alexander when he died did not declare who should succeed him, there started up as many kings as there were commanders. At first they governed the provinces, that were divided amongst them, under the title of vice-roys, but when the family of Alexander the Great was extinct, they took upon them
the

the name of kings. Hence in process of time, the whole empire of Alexander produced four distinct kingdoms. 1. The Macedonian. 2. Asiatic, 3. Syrian. 4. Egyptian, which flourished long under their own kings, till at last they were all compelled to receive the Roman yoke.

The kings of Macedonia who reigned after Alexander were,

- iv. a. C. 1. Antipater, who governed under the title of vice-roy of Macedon.
- iii. a. C. 2. Cassander, his son, who assumed the title of king, the family of Alexander being extirpated.
- 3. Demetrius Poliorcetes*, the son of Antigonus king of Asia.
- 4. Seleucus Nicanor†, who was assassinated by Ptolemy Ceraunus, who is soon after defeated and killed by the Gauls.
- 5. Meleager, reigns but two months; and his successor Antigonus the Etesian reigns but 45 days. The government was seized by Antigonus Gonatas son of Demetrius, who reigned many years and transmitted the kingdom to his family,

* Demetrius a few years after the death of Cassander, seized the kingdom of Macedon.

† Seleucus can hardly be called king of Macedonia. He had indeed driven out Lyfimachus, who had driven out Pyrrhus, who had expelled Demetrius, but Seleucus was assassinated by Ptolemy Ceraunus before he could be said to be in possession of the kingdom.

Antigonus

6. Antigonus Doson succeeds Demetrius II.

7. Philip, a bold and brave man, who having long tried the force of the Roman arms, is at last subdued by them, and forced to conclude an ignominious peace. 11. a. C.

8. Perseus, who renewing the war against the Romans, was overcome and taken by Æmilius, and carried in triumph to Rome, where he died in prison. And thus the Macedonian kingdom was reduced to the form of a Roman province. An. 168.

The *Asiatic* kingdom, which upon the death of Alexander fell to Antigonus, comprehended that country which we now call Natolia, together with some other regions beyond Mount Taurus. From this kingdom in after times proceeded three lesser ones.

1. Of Pergamus, whose last king Attalus, appointed the Roman people to be his heir.

2. Pontus, reduced by the Romans into the form of a province, they having subdued the last king Mithridates, after heavy and continual wars. 3. The kingdom of Armenia, of which Tigranes was the last king.

Of the twenty two kings of Syria, the most celebrated were, 1. Seleucus Nicanor, founder of the kingdom. After him his successors were called the Seleucidæ*. 2. Antiochus Deus, in whose reign the Parthians

* The æra of the Seleucidæ begins from his taking Babylon, An. 312. a. C.

rebelling,

- III. a. C. rebelling*, erect a new empire in the east
 An. 250. under Arsaces. 3. Antiochus the Great,
 who, having reduced great part of the east
 was so daring as to make war upon the
 II. a. C. Romans, but being defeated by Acilius †,
 he is banished beyond Mount Taurus. 4.
 Antiochus Epiphanes, a most cruel enemy
 of the Jews, Tigranes, who, at the same
 I. a. C. time governed both Syria and Armenia: but
 he being conquered by the Romans, under
 An. 63. Pompey, Syria was reduced into the form of
 a Roman province.

After the death of Alexander the Greeks
 formed a new kingdom in Egypt. And it
 flourished under twelve kings for near 240
 years. Of these the most famous are rec-
 koned to have been,

- IV. a. C. 1. Ptolemy Lagus, who had served under
 An. 323. Alexander the Great, and being the founder
 of the kingdom of Egypt, all his successors
 were called after him Ptolemies.
 III. a. C. 2. Ptolemy Philadelphus, a great promoter
 of arts and literature, and founder of the
 Alexandrian library. At his comand it is
 believed, the septuagint, or translation of the
 seventy interpreters was made.

* The original places Arsaces under Antiochus Soter;
 but this is a mistake: for the Parthians under Arsaces
 and the Bactrians under Theodotus, did not revolt till
 the reign of Antiochus Deus. An. 250. a. C.

† Antiochus was first defeated by Acilius Glabrio
 the consul, at Thermopylæ; and then by Lucius Scipio,
 at Magnesia.

3. Queen

3. Queen Cleopatra *, whose name is well known in history on account of her illicit amours with Marc Antony. She was overcome by Augustus, and Egypt underwent the same fate with other kingdoms, by being added to the dominion of the Romans.

J. a. C.
An. 30.

In this period the more celebrated sects of philosophers prevailed in Greece, such as the academics, Peripatetics, Stoics, Epicureans, Sceptics, Cynics, &c. The authors of them were, Plato, Aristotle, Zeno, Epicurus, Pyrrho, Antisthenes. The greatest encourager of arts and studies in this period was Ptolemy Philadelphus: the literati and the artists therefore flocked to the royal city of Alexandria, as to the true seat of the muses. The most famous Alexandrian library was erected by the same king, which was so

* Cleopatra was lewd and inconstant, and less in love with Antony than Antony with her. She married her brother and poisoned him: she had a son by Julius Cæsar, and after that lay with the son of Pompey, and others. She betrayed Antony in his last distress, and courted Octavius by the surrender of Pelusium, the navy and the cavalry, and then caused it to be reported to Antony, that she had killed herself, to avoid the conqueror, and he deceived by the report fell upon his sword. She then practised all her arts to win Augustus, but he proved too cunning for her, and preferred the glory of making her grace his triumph, and wear his chains, to the wearing hers. To avoid that disgrace, she applied asps to her breast, and died, as it is said, upon Antony's tomb, in the 39th or 40th year of her age. Augustus caused the son she had by Cæsar, called Cæsario, to be murdered, that there might be no more Cæsars than one.

augmented

augmented by his successors as to contain 700,000 volumes. Varro records, that at the time when Alexandria was beginning to be built, the use of the Papyrus was discovered, a plant which grows in the marshes of Egypt near the river Nile, and being found to be very fit for writing, it came into common use every where. We therefore call the leaves we use Paper, and Bibles was the name for books, which originally signified only the covers. Before the invention of the Papyrus they made use of tables, as they were called, smeered over with wax, on which they traced their letters with an instrument called a style. Hence in Latin letters are called *tabellæ*, and letter-carriers *tabellarii*, and both in the Latin and the modern phrase the manner of writing that distinguishes one author from another is called his style. Eumenes, king of Bithynia, founded a very noble library at Pergamus, and the Egyptian princes, that they might hinder the advancement of this collection, prohibited the exportation of the Papyrus; but Eumenes commanded books to be made of another substance, which from Pergamus was called Pergamena, whence the word parchment. In this period were built the famous cities of Seleucia and Antioch, whose rise was the ruin of other cities in Asia, and particularly of Babylon: which from that time became neglected till at last it was entirely ruined.

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE HISTORY OF THE FOURTH, THAT IS, THE ROMAN MONARCHY.

The Roman history may most conveniently be divided into three ages. 1. Under kings. 2. Under consuls. And 3. Under emperors.

Rome continued under the government of kings two hundred and forty-four years*,
from

* By adding to the lives of these kings, and making them to reign about 35 years each, which cannot be reconciled to the course of nature, the contrivers of the artificial chronology have carried up the antiquity of the city so high as the 6th or 7th Olympiad.

To settle the æra of the building the city of Rome, let it be observed, that the later Romans said the city was built by Romulus, in the 15th age after the destruction of Troy, that is, after the 14 kings who reigned at Alba. The reigns of these kings at 21 years, one with another, amount to 280 years; and these counted from the taking of Troy (74 years after the death of Solomon, and 904 before Christ) end in the 38th Olympiad. Reckon the seven kings of Rome at 17 years apiece (which is rather large, considering one was deposed, and four or five slain) and they amount to 119 years, which, counted back from the refuge in the first year of the 68th Olympiad, end in the 38th Olympiad. Rome therefore was built in the 38th Olympiad, or about 627 before Christ. The same end will be obtained, by allowing 19 years for each of the Kings who reigned at Alba, and at Rome. This must appear a large allowance, when it is considered, that in all the reigns, from Augustus to Constantine, not more than four or five reigned above 20 years, one only 20,
two

from the building of the city until the time when the royal power was abrogated.

The kings of Rome were,

1. v. C.

viii. a. C.

An. 753.

1. Romulus, who founded the city of Rome, and cut off his brother Remus, who was his rival for the new kingdom. He first divided the city into thirty *Curia* or courts, and the people into three tribes, and having fixed the state of things, he took the opportunity of carrying off the Sabine women, whilst they attended some public sports, which gave occasion for a long and vehement war with the Sabines. But by the interposition of the Sabine women, who had been carried off, it is at length agreed upon by the Sabines and the Romans that *Tatius* the Sabine general should share the government of Rome with Romulus; but *Tatius* being slain, Romulus reigned alone.

2. *Numa Pompilius* succeeded Romulus, who turning his thoughts to the cultivation of peace, instituted religious rites for Rome, and added two months more to the year, which till then consisted but of ten.

3. *Tullus Hostilius* impatient of peace, and born for arms. He destroyed the old city

two 19, and that 36 reigns did not yield nine years to each emperor, from 30 years before Christ, to the 306th year of Christ. See *Newton's Chronology*, and the Preface to the last edition of *Mr. Hooke's Roman History*, where *Sir Isaac's* account of the fall of *Troy*, the building of *Rome*, and other chronological matters, are defended and confirmed by new authorities.

Alba,

Alba, and transferred all its inhabitants and riches to Rome.

II. V. C.

4. Ancus Martius, who adorned Rome with fairest edifices*.

5. Tarquinius Priscus †.

6. Servius Tullius, who made many excellent regulations for the public good. He first established the Censur, which he ordered to be made every fifth year. From the Censur he divided the people into classes and centuries or hundreds. But, after he had reigned 44 years with the greatest applause, he is cut off by the execrable parricide of his daughter ‡, and his son-in-law Tarquin.

III. V. C.

7. Tarquin, surnamed the Proud, who governed the kingdom with the same wicked cruelty and tyranny by which he came to it §. At last, on account of his inability to govern,

* Considering the ignorance of those times, it is not probable that the buildings of Ancus deserved the epithet *fairest*: but he enlarged the city, by taking in the Aventine mount, and the Janiculum. He also built Ostia at the mouth of the Tiber, if we give credit to the Roman History of these first ages.

† He is said to have instituted the games of the Circus, to have laid the foundations of the capitol, and made drains for carrying off the filth of the city. He increased the number of senators, and subdued some of the neighbouring people, and at last was, in his old age, killed by the sons of his predecessor.

‡ She is said to have driven her chariot over the body of her father.

§ He is said to have been the first who erected prisons, and practised tortures in Rome. It was he cut off the heads

govern, he is driven into banishment; and thus the regal power, hateful to the Romans, was abrogated in the 244th year after the building of the city.

The regal power seems to have been very limited before the time of Tarquin the Proud, for the kings could do nothing without the consent of the people. *Comitia* were appointed in which the people gave their suffrages, either by tribes, or by *Curiae*, or by Centuries. Hence the *Comitia Tributa*, *Curiate*, and *Centuriata**. There was a Senate also, consisting of an hundred elderly men or fathers, whose authority was of great weight in the republic. But that the lowest of the common people might in some measure be kept from any share in the administration, or the right of voting, Servius Tullius artfully contrived the *Comitia Centuriata*, and divided the people into certain classes, which were estimated not in proportion to the number of the people, but

heads of the poppies, to shew that his son should cut off the heads of the chief amongst the Gabians, to whom he had fled from the severities of his father. Whilst this tyrant was besieging Ardea, the citizens took the pretence, given them by the attempt his son Sextus made upon the chastity of Lucretia, to get rid of his tyranny. Tarquin lived 13 years after his banishment.

* For an account of these *Comitia*, the reader may consult Nieupoort, *Rituum qui olim apud Romanos, &c. explicatio*. Sect. I. cap. 5, 6, 7 and 8. or *Pitisci*, *Lexic. Antiq. voc. Comitia*.

according-

according to their income and estates, by which means the poor seldom were admitted to give their suffrages.

After the expulsion of the kings, the Ro-^{III. U. C.}mans chose two consuls, whose authority at first differed little from that of kings. But that they might not seem to have taken two kings instead of one, changing only the name of king, it was provided by law, that the consuls should be annual magistrates: the first consuls were Junius Brutus and Tarquinius Collatinus.

The wars which the Romans carried on under consuls were either Italic, foreign or domestic.

The principal enemies, whose arms and prowess the Romans proved in Italy, were the Hetrurians, the Veientes, Gauls, Samnites, and Tarentines. The most powerful of these^{IV. U. C.} were the Gauls, who under the command of Brennus took Rome, and besieged the capitol: But Camillus hastening to assist the besieged, drove the Gauls from the capitol, and made a great slaughter of them. In memorial therefore of his having saved the city, he was called a second Romulus. Nor were^{V. U. C.} the Samnitic and Tarentine wars less severe, when Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, called in to aid the Tarentines, reduced the commonwealth of Rome to great straits: but being subdued at length, he is forced to quit Italy.

After his departure, all Italy fell under the Roman yoke*.

The principal foreign wars were,

IV. and VI.
U. C.

1. The three Carthaginian or punic wars. For Carthage was a rival to Rome, and often contended with her for superiority. This city, which was at that time one of the most celebrated for trade, and was grown remarkably opulent by her commerce, began to spread far and near the terror of her arms. For she not only made a great part of Africa bordering upon her tributary, but sent forces into Sicily, Sardinia, and Spain. Hence proceeded wars with the Romans, the two former of which were long and violent, but in the third Carthage was utterly destroyed.

VII. U. C.
An. 608.

VI. U. C.

2. The two Macedonian wars, the first against Philip, the second against Perseus, who being conquered by the consul Paulus Æmilius was carried in triumph.

3. The Syrian war with Antiochus the Great, as above.

VII. U. C.
An. 608.

4. The Grecian war, in which the famous city of Corinth was razed to the ground.

5. The Cimbrian war, which was of such consequence, that had it not been for Caius

* The Romans were near 500 years in conquering Italy; but afterwards, the conquest of all the nations round the Mediterranean did not cost them above half the time.

Marius,

Marius, who lived at that time, Rome would have been no more*.

6. The war with the Helvetii and Gauls who were at length subdued by Julius Cæsar.

The principal civil wars were,

1. Between Marius, Cinna, and Sylla, in which Sylla being conqueror was created perpetual dictator.

2. Between Pompey and Cæsar, in which VIII. U.C. Cæsar prevailed, and having defeated Pompey in the plains of Pharsalia, he put an end to the liberty of the Romans.

3. Between Antonius and Octavius, in which Octavius proving victor, in the naval fight at Actium, the liberties of the Romans An. 723 being taken away, he founded the Roman monarchy.

Concerning the real cause of the civil wars, we may observe; it happened to Rome, what must always be the case, that when the nobles rise up against tyrants, and destroy or abridge the regal power, they consult their own interest in new modelling the state. For it seems to be indisputable that Brutus and his associates, who were all of them

* The author should in this place have mentioned the Mithridatic war, with Mithridates king of Pontus, which was long and obstinate, that prince having supported himself 26 years against the Romans, notwithstanding the defeats he met with from Sylla and Lucullus. At length Pompey triumphed over that prince, as well as over his ally Tigranes.

Patricians, had it in their view to transfer the dominion to the nobles, as it is not credible that they should, at the hazard of their lives, get rid of kings, and leave to the lower people the fruits of so much labour and peril. And the form of government established after the expulsion of the kings, shews it to have been the principal care of the nobles, that the imperial majesty should reside in the senate and two consuls with regal power, to the exclusion of the common people. And if you consider the condition of the people, they were not delivered from regal sway, but from the hated name of kings only, and were sometimes treated with more severity under the senate and the consuls than under kings. Hence in despair they left the city, nor could be prevailed upon to return, till a proper officer was granted them, who might protect the meanest citizen against the great and powerful. Tribunes of the people therefore were created, whose institution sufficiently provided for the security of the lowest of the people. But the creation of these tribunes was the cause and origin of all the troubles that followed. For from that time the Roman people were divided into two factions, the nobles and plebeians: and the tribunes did not think it enough to repel the injuries of the Patricians, but endeavoured to subvert all the authority of the senate. First, they obtained by force and menaces, that the Patricians,

Patricians should inter-marry with the plebeians, and then that one of the consuls should always be chosen from amongst the people. They even attempted to make laws and exercise the rights of supreme power without leave of the senate. But all these things were not carried without great struggling and sometimes force, the senate now boldly and openly opposing, at other times by artifice and schemes endeavouring to defeat the encroachments of the tribunes*. At length,

* The privilege of inter-marriages seems rather a principle of union and reconciliation, than of variance and dissention; and that one consul should be chosen out of the people, besides that it was most reasonable, seemed well contrived to preserve the political balance even, which could not be done without some sort of equality. As to the contests between the senate and the tribunes, as in bringing the affair of Coriolanus not before the *Comitia Centuriata*, which was evidently calculated to exclude the common people, but before the *Comitia Tributa*, where every man had his suffrage, and the nobles were not excluded, in this and other contests, perhaps the people were less to blame than the nobles. But this, and other curious matters relating to the commonwealth of Rome, is largely discoursed of in the notes to a most accurate and elegant translation of Dionysius of Halicarnassus, by the very learned Mr. Spelman. It is certain the conduct of the nobles had been such as rendered it absolutely necessary to chuse such an officer as the tribune to protect the people against them. The people had left the city in despair, and would never have returned to it again, unless such an officer was created. The appointment of tribunes therefore was so far from being the cause of ruin, evil, or declension to the Roman strength or greatness, magnificence or liberty, that they were then necessary to the existence of Rome; and when

length, the Romans, tired with these calamities, saw that the wounds given to the Republic could no other way be healed than by committing the supreme power to one man. Dictators therefore were created with regal power, but at the end of the dictatorship they relapsed into their old distemper, till at last they submitted themselves to the dominion of one.

The state of arts and letters under the consuls was not very flourishing.

The Romans, giving up their whole time to the cultivation of arms and agriculture, slighted other arts and learning. How great their ignorance of arts was appears amongst other instances from the edict of Mummius, who having destroyed Corinth, ordered the pictures painted by some of the most celebrated

her tribunes lost their influence, she lost her liberty. The foldiers received double pay, and the senators were increased to too great a number, and were too easily corrupted, and from these causes principally proceeded the ruin of the commonwealth. Cæsar acted by the army, and Octavius more powerfully by his influence over the senate, whilst Brutus and Cassius, and the other murderers of Cæsar, assassinated him, without deriving any advantage from his death, either to the republic or themselves, but gave up all the opportunity of making any political use of that event to Antony, their enemy and Cæsar's friend. That Cæsar loved Brutus appears from his will, and he had lately pardoned the other conspirators who had been of Pompey's party. He was subject to epileptic fits, and if they had waited for the natural expiration of his days, they might have succeeded better, they could not have succeeded worse; and as they were not prepared for the event, his murder was inexcusable,

artists

artists in all Greece to be carried to Rome, with this caution, that if any were lost in the way, they should be obliged to make up the number. And in the time of Cato the elder, when some of the ablest philosophers in Greece came to Rome, at the instance of the same Cato, they were ordered to depart the city, lest the minds of the youth should be corrupted by philosophy, and rendered too soft for military achievements. But, towards the end of the Republic, the Romans began to imitate the Greeks in arts and learning. Anciently they had no written laws at Rome, till the laws of Solon were brought from Athens to the city. These laws generally called the laws of the twelve tables, because they were written on twelve tables, constituted the civil law of the Romans. These laws were afterwards corrected by various decrees of the senate, orders of the people, and edicts of the Prætors. It was called a *Law* when commanded by the whole people; a *senatus-consultum*, or decree of the senate, when ordered by the senate only; a *plebiscitum* or act of the commons, when directed by the tribune of the people; and order of council, or *honorary right* when appointed by the Prætors.

THE

THE HISTORY OF THE FOURTH
MONARCHY.

In this access to the history of the last of the four monarchies, we open a very spacious field, marked with a great variety of objects; for many kingdoms and commonwealths, flourishing to this day under their own kings and governors, started up from the broken remains of the Roman monarchy. To preserve order of time, it will be best to divide this history into ages; but, as the memory of beginners is here to be considered, and care must be taken, that they be not confus'd with too complicated a variety of things, I have judg'd it most convenient to treat singly of the principal kingdoms arising out of the fourth monarchy, after I have concluded the history of that monarchy. I shall therefore first discourse of the rise, and progress, and end of the Roman monarchy, and then pass to the history of other nations, particularly the European.

As the Roman monarchy, after it had stood long united, was at length divided into two equal parts, viz. the eastern and western empires, it may be considered 1st, according to the state it was in, before that division, 2dly, after that division: but I shall take the liberty to consider the state of the empire, as

it happen'd to be under pagan and christian emperors.

The pagan emperors were,

1. Augustus, founder of the empire, who having allay'd all discords, with which the republic had been agitated, enjoy'd a long and peaceable reign *. Under this pacific emperor, 1st cent. the true prince of peace, and redeemer of the world, Jesus Christ was born. This is the commencement of the christian æra, christian chronologers being accustomed to compute times from the nativity of Christ. Augustus having reigned happily near 57 years dies.

2. Tiberius, (son of Tiberius Nero, and Livia Drusilla, afterwards married to Augustus) a suspicious, angry, cruel man. He retir'd to the island Capreæ, where he wasted his age † in a vile and filthy manner, having committed the care of the commonwealth to Sejanus,

* He reigned 44 years after the battle of Actium, and died A. C. 14, in the 76th year of his age. He was assisted in his government by Mæcenas, who favoured the nobles, and by Agrippa, who was a friend to the common people and the commonwealth of Rome, and therefore Augustus preserved all the appearances of a popular form of government, even whilst he was divesting the people of all real authority. He survived these able ministers, and by some false steps was made sensible of, and owned their loss.

† He reigned 22 years, lived 78, and died A. C. 37. One of his vilest actions was the engaging Pison, governor of Syria, to poison his nephew Germanicus at Antioch, in

1st cent.

Sejanus, a man most like himself, a deviser of villainies. Under this emperor Christ is crucified, dies, and rises from the dead.

3. Caius Caligula*, so called from what was usually worn on the leg in the camp, more a monster than a man, of whom Tiberius was used to say, that he brought up a serpent for the Roman people. Such was the folly of this emperor, that arrogating divine majesty to himself, he would be saluted with the title of Jupiter; and such his barbarity, as to wish the Roman people had but one neck, that he might cut it off at one stroke. At length he was killed by the tribunes Cassius and Sabinus.

4. Claudius, who on account of his folly and simplicity may rather be said to have been governed by others, than to have governed himself†. His wife Messalina was so

in the 34th year of his age, after he had adopted him his successor. He was an excellent prince, and the army, then under his command in Germany, would have chosen him emperor as soon as the death of Augustus was known, but he refused that honour, and with difficulty quieted the soldiers. Theodorus Gadareus, preceptor to this emperor, said he was a lump of clay steeped in blood.

* He began to reign about the 37th year of Christ, and was killed in the year 41, having reigned three years, two months, and eight days.

† His mother Antonia used to say, when she met with a very silly fellow, he is as great a fool as my son Claudius. He died A. C. 54, being more than 63 years old, of which he reigned 13 years, eight months, and twenty days.

debauched

debauched and impudent a woman, that ^{1st cent.} she was not ashamed to marry Caius Silius, during the life of her husband. Claudius had another wife called Agrippina, whose son Nero he adopted, to the exclusion of Britannicus, whom he had by Messalina. Under this emperor Great Britain was reduced to the form of a province.

5. Nero, the scourge of mankind, after whom the more cruel tyrants (none more cruel than himself) have been called Nero's. For the first five years indeed he reigned with applause, whence that saying of Trajan's *cunctos principes longe abesse a Neronis quinquennio*, that all princes were far short of the first five years of Nero's reign. His preceptors were Burrhus and Seneca, the first renowned for his skill in arms, the other for his wisdom and learning. Provoked to virtue by the perpetual admonitions of these men, he ruled at first with so much clemency, that when he was to sign an order for the death of any person he used to say, *vellem me nescire literas*, I wish I could not write. But soon changing his manners, he put his preceptors to death, poisoned his brother Britannicus, and killed his mother Agrippina, and his wives Octavia and Poppæa. He sunk into so great barbarity and such foolish luxury as to set fire to the city of Rome, to fish with nets of gold, and never twice to wear the same cloaths. At last the provinces rising to assert their rights, he is forsaken,

1st cent.

faken of all, and puts an end to himself*; grieving that the world should be deprived of so great an artist, meaning a lutanist or fiddler.

6. Galba, who was saluted Emperor by the Spanish army, and soon after slain † by the Prætorians for his too great severity exercised upon the soldiers.

7. Otho, who being overcome by Vitellius kills himself with his own hand ‡.

8. Vitellius successor to Otho, a man of § incontinent gluttony and cruelty; but his reign also was short; for Vespasian being declared emperor, by the Syrian legions, he is dragged half naked into the Forum by the Roman people, and with most exquisite torments torn to pieces, and thrown into the Tiber with a hook.

9. Vespasian, emulous of the virtues of Augustus; of that clemency as to be grieved

* In the 32d year of his age, after having reigned 13 years, seven months, and 28 days, A. C. 68. Two years after there appeared a man who understood music as well as Nero, and pretended he was Nero. He imposed upon so many as to become formidable at sea, but was killed in a naval engagement by Calpurnius Asprenas, and brought to Rome, where the people were surprized at the likeness he bore to the late emperor.

† He was created emperor in June 68, and killed on the 10th of January, 69, in the 73d year of his age.

‡ He was a very debauched wicked prince, and reigned only three months and seven days.

§ He is said, in the reign of Claudius, to have carried one of Messalina's slippers under his robe to kiss it. His reign was short, about eight months five days. Killed in the 57th year of his age.

at

at the infliction of punishment, even when it ^{1st cent.} was right. But he was not free from avarice; for he laid a tax upon urine, and used to say that gain made every thing smell sweet, *bonus lucri odor e re qualibet* *.

10. Titus †, on account of his singular humanity, was called the delight of mankind; he was so generous, that if he had passed a day, without exercising his usual goodness, he used this memorable saying; my friends, I have lost a day! *Amici, diem perdidit*. He destroyed Jerusalem in the life-time of his father.

11. Domitian ‡, brother of Titus, a cruel impious man, who grievously persecuted the christians. At last grown detestable to all, on account of his cruelty, he is put to death by his own guards.

12. Cocceius Nerva §, a man of prudence, and moderation, who acquired the dominion, when he was advanced in life. When there-

* He reigned 10 years. Died July 24, A. C. 79, aged 69, one month seven days.

† He reigned only two years, two months, and 20 days. Died in 81, aged 41. He is supposed to have been poisoned by his brother, who succeeded him.

‡ This is the emperor who, in the beginning of his reign, entertained himself with killing of flies, and of whom Vibius Crispus said, being asked who was with the emperor, not so much as a fly. He was killed the 18th of September, A. C. 96, aged 55. Reigned 15 years.

§ He reigned one year, four months, nine days. Died January 27, A. C. 98, in the 66th year of his age.

fore,

1st cent.

fore, he found himself unequal to so great a burden, he adopted Ulpus Trajan.

13. Ulpus Trajan*, a valiant man, well skilled in affairs of war, and so wise and moderate, as to deserve the surname of Optimus, the best. He subdued all the east.
- 2nd cent. He destroyed the empire of the Parthians, which had hitherto remained unconquered. Such was the justice of this emperor, that when he delivered according to custom the sword to the chief of the prætorium, he added, use this for me, if I rule with justice, and against me if I rule otherwise, *hoc pro me si juste imperavero, si perperam contra me utere.*

14. Ælius Adrianus†, a man of uneven disposition of mind, equally distinguished for his vices and his virtues. He reduced the

* He reigned 19 years, six months, 15 days. Died in Cilicia of a bloody flux, or, as some think, of poison, A. C. 117, aged 64. He built the famous pillar, called by his name, in seven years. In his reign flourished Plutarch, Lucian, the younger Pliny, Suetonius, Florus, and Tacitus.

† He died July 10, A. C. 138. Reigned 20 years 11 months, aged 62. In his time lived Ptolemy, of Alexandria, the astronomer, Justin, and A. Gellius. He came into Britain, and separated Scotland from England by a wall of 80,000 paces. He was the author of these verses to his soul when dying.

‘ Animula, vagula, blandula,
‘ Hospes, comesque corporis,
‘ Quæ nunc abibis in loca,
‘ Pallidula, rigida, nudula,
‘ Nec ut soles dabis jocos.’

tumul-

tumultuous Jews, who had risen under the command of Barchocheba, making a great slaughter of them. He had an excellent memory, and was skilled in every, the minutest art. More learned therefore than those who professed the arts, he laughed at, and rallied them, preferring Cato to Cicero, and Ennius to Virgil.

15. Antoninus Pius *, adopted by Hadrian, who for his virtues, his humanity, and the sweetness of his manners, deserved the name of Pious. Whilst he lived he governed the world by his authority alone without going to war.

16. Marcus Aurelius †, so given to philosophy, as to acquire the name of the Philosopher. He was in all things a prince of the greatest moderation. He was successful in his war with the Marcomanni and Quadi. He had that saying of Plato's, for ever in his mouth, Happy is that state where philosophers are kings, and kings philosophers.

17. Lucius Commodus ‡ succeeded, the unworthy son of a most worthy farther. For in cruelty, lust, foul and base arts he was most

* He died March 7, A. C. 161, aged 75. He succeeded to the empire in February 138. Reigned 22 years, seven months, 26 days. Then lived Polycarp, Justin the Christian martyr, Galen, and Aelian.

† He died in Pannonia March 17, 180, aged 58, of which he reigned 19 years.

‡ He died in 192, the last day of that year, in the 22d year of his age, after a reign of 13 years.

K

like

11d. cent.

like unto Nero. He was therefore kill'd for his barbarity, and the Senate pronounced him an enemy to men and gods.

18. Helvius Pertinax*, who was stabbed in his palace, before he had reigned three months, by the fury of the soldiery, who being most corrupt, (and impatient of discipline,) did not approve of him †.

19. Septimius Severus ‡, a man really, as well as nominally severe: he cashiered the Prætorians, who had unworthily put to death Pertinax. He encountered and overcame severally Pescennius Niger præfect in Syria, and Clodius Albinus præfect of Britain, who were both competitors for the empire. After many great actions performed by him in the east, he died at York in Britain.

111d cent.

* He was 69 years old before he began to reign, was chosen by the prætorian guard, and approved of by the senate on account of his experience. He was murdered in 193, two months 25 days after his election.

† Add, Didius Julianus, the lawyer, who bought the empire, when the prætorian guards put it up to sale. He was soon put to death, and succeeded by Severus.

‡ After he had declared his sons Cæsar, Caracalla, impatient to reign, following his father, drew his sword to kill him, but was prevented by the outcry of those about him. The father seemed to take no notice of this intended parricide, but it threw him into such melancholy, as killed him at York the 4th of February, 211, after having reigned 17 years, eight months, three days. Aged 67.

20. An-

20. Antoninus Caracalla * and Geta, two ^{111d} cent. sons of Severus, reigned with equal authority after the death of their father. Geta was of a mild temper, the other rash and fierce and cruel: hence proceeded seeds of perpetual discord between these brothers, so unlike to one another. At last Caracalla kills (the unfortunate) Geta in the arms of his mother: and he himself, after a cruel and abominable reign of six years is slain by Macrinus.

21. Macrinus † who slew Caracalla, after an unsuccessful war with the Parthians, is slain by the soldiers.

22. Upon the death of Macrinus, Varius Antoninus ‡ is raised to the empire, who being a priest of the Idol Heliogabalus, was himself called Heliogabalus. This Varius was the slave of every villany and vice; he both committed and suffered what decency forbids to mention. At last when he was contriving the death of Alexander, whom he had adopted, he is put to death by the soldiers,

* Caracalla reigned six years, two months, six days. Spartianus says he was 40, and Geta 23 years old.

† Elected emperor in 217. He had been a gladiator, huntsman, notary, &c. He reigned one year and two months.

‡ He put several senators to death, because they refused to admit of a senate of ladies to determine the affairs of that sex, and of which his mother was to have been *Mad. la Présidente*. He was killed March 10, A. C. 222. Reigned three years, nine months, four days. Aged 18, or 20 years.

111d cent. and after having been dragged through the city is thrown into the Tiber.

23. Alexander Severus*, a good and just prince, and a lover of learning. This learned emperor forbid the sale of employments, asserting that it was not to be expected that a man should not sell what he had bought. He therefore gave salaries out of the Treasury, to the rulers of provinces, that they might not be a burden to the people. In the administration of justice, he made use of Ulpian a lawyer of great fame. He was successful in his war against Artaxerxes, the new king of Persia; and after that he undertook an expedition into Germany, in which he was slain by some of the soldiers.

24. Julius Maximinus of Thrace†, a man of fierce manners, and great bulk, and so strong, that he could tear up trees by the roots with his hands, and eat 40 pounds of

* He was killed the 18th of March, 235, aged 29. Reigned 13 years nine days.

† He was originally a shepherd of mean extract, and when emperor he put to death his most ancient friends, and all who could give any account of his origin. The most noble were the most obnoxious, and of these he fastened some to a cross, others he dressed in the skins of beasts, and exposed them to wild animals to be torn to pieces. He reigned three years, was killed, together with his son, in 238. The father was 65, and the son 21 years of age. The son was to be pitied, if what is said of him be true, that he had not the cruel disposition of his father, was very handsome, and had studied the Greek and Roman letters to perfection.

meat

meat in a day. He raged cruelly against the ^{11th cent.} Roman senate, and against the Christians. And being declared by the former, an enemy to the Roman people, he is killed by the soldiers at the siege of Aquileia.

25. That Tyrant being put to death, Maximus and * Balbinus are raised to the empire by favour of the Senate, but are both soon after slain by the soldiers.

26. Gordian †, a young prince of excellent disposition. He was successful in war, but in a little time killed by the soldiers, whom Philip, chief of the prætorian, had corrupted.

27. Philip the Arabian ‡, in whose reign were instituted the secular games, the city having then subsisted a thousand years. But after a reign of five years, both he and his son are slain by the soldiers.

28. Decius §, a severe persecutor of the christians, in other respects a man of excellent understanding, and well skilled in war: he

* They reigned only 10 or 11 months. Balbinus was 60 years old. He is said to have been an excellent poet and orator, and a good man. Maximus, called Pupienus, was 74 years old. They were both beloved by the people.

† Reigned six years.

‡ Slain in the year 249.

§ He reigned near three years.

3rd cent. was drowned in a marsh, fighting against the Barbarians *.

29. Valerianus and Gallienus, so pure were the manners of the former, that when he was Cenfor, all bore him testimony, that the whole life of Valerianus, was a censure, or reformation of manners. Being taken in a war against the Persians, by Sapor king of Persia, he was flea'd alive †. In the mean time Gallienus the son, lost in luxury and debaucheries, suffers the empire to be torn from him on all sides by barbarians and tyrants. Hence thirty emperors created every where, in the empire itself, rise against him; they are called by historians the thirty tyrants. Amongst them was Zenobia, wife to Odenatus prince of Palmyra, a woman of martial spirit, who spread her conquering arms far over the eastern world.

30. Claudius II. a frugal and moderate man. He was successful in his war against the Goths. For it appears that 320,000 Goths were slain, and two thousand ships sunk. This worthy prince died of the plague ‡.

* Here our author should have inserted Gallus, and his son Volusianus, who reigned two or three years; and Æmilianus, who reigned about three months.

† About the year 260. These colleagues began their reign about the year 254. Gallienus and his sons are said to have been put to death by Claudius about 268.

‡ He was cruel to the Christians, and died in 270, after having reigned one year 10 months, and some days, aged about 32.

31. Aurelian

TO UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

135.

31. Aurelian, is reckoned amongst the best of princes, only he was rather inclined to severities*. He carried Zenobia a captive in triumph, who till then had been unconquered. In the sixth year of his reign he was slain by the soldiers.

32. Claudius Tacitus †, a man of excellent morals, who reported himself to be of the same family with the historian of that name, and therefore ordered his bust to be set up in all libraries.

33. Aurelius Probus ‡, a man famous both for his probity of manners, and military skill. He, having fought with success against the Germans, is at length slain by his soldiers.

34. Aurelius Carus § is chosen to succeed Probus. He created his sons Carinus and Numerianus Cæsars. Having subdued Mesopotamia, and proceeded as far as Ctesiphon, he is struck dead with lightning. Numerianus a prince of good morals was killed by his father-in-law Aper. Carinus too, a young man of bad morals, died by the treachery of those about him.

* They said he would have been a good doctor if he had not taken away too much blood. He was killed in 275, after a reign of five years six months, aged 75.

† There was an interregnum of about seven months before his election. He reigned six more, and was assassinated by the soldiers in 275.

‡ He was the son of a peasant in Dalmatia, and reigned six years four months.

§ Elected in 282, died in 283.

K 4

35. Dioclesian,

3rd cent.

35. Dioclesian *, he slew Aper, who had killed Numerian; and by killing Aper, accomplished a prediction, which had formerly been delivered in his favour, that he should be an emperor, when he killed an Aper (this word is latin for a wild boar.) After this he created Constantius Chlorus, and Gallorius Maximian, Cæsars †, and did many gallant actions, which merited a triumph: at last he with Maximian quitted the purple, and grew old in retirement.

11th cent.

36. Constantius ‡, the father of Constantine the Great, whose history concludes the period of the pagan emperors.

The political state of Rome under the pagan emperors was as follows.

The condition of the Romans being changed, and the majesty of the empire transferred to Augustus alone, that some shadow of ancient liberty might seem to remain, the emperor prudently declared, that he did not undertake the charge of the commonwealth for

* Died in 316.

† He made Maximian his Colleague, that is created him Augstus, the next year after he had created him Cæsar. Our author seems to confound *Maximianus Hercules*, who resigned, with *Gallorius Maximianus*, who succeeded to the empire with Constantius Chlorus. See *Petav. Rat. Temp. P. I. page 214.*

‡ Constantius created Cæsar, A. C. 291. He and Gallorius were emperors in 304, by the resignation of Maximilian and Dioclesian. Constantius died at York, July 25, 306.

more

more than ten years, nor would take away from the authority of the Senate, or the rights of the people. But the first ten years being expired, he undertook another term for the same time, as intreated to it by the prayers of the Senate. In that time he suffered all the ensigns of antient liberty to be kept up, the senate, consular dignity, and that of the tribunes, &c. publicly protesting, that he only took upon himself the care of those provinces which were most liable to disturbances and commotions, leaving such others as could be more easily kept in their duty, to the judgment of the Senate. They, who were commissioned by the senate to govern provinces, were called Proconsuls; by Augustus, Proprætors only. But as the power over the life and death of soldiers was not allowed to the Proconsuls, tho' it was to the Proprætors, the former had the preference in title and form only, and the latter in real and true authority. He restored also the rights of voting to the people, which right had been much impaired by the triumvirate; but then he restored them that liberty in such manner, that he himself had always the power to controul the elections. This shadow of liberty remained for some time in Rome, even after the death of Augustus, but then it was no more than a shadow, since neither the senate nor the people, dared to exercise those rights, that had been granted them, without knowing first the

the will of the emperor. The majesty of the whole empire, therefore, resided in the emperors alone, who caressed only the soldiers, because safe under their guard, they held the city in oppression. Besides the legions dispersed throughout the provinces, which stood ready to obey the emperor's nod, there were prætorian soldiers or body-guards, supported in Rome, at a vast expence by the emperors. These prætorians in process of time began to be very troublesome to the emperors, so that they were compelled to purchase their favour, by augmenting their pay, and by other great gifts: for the soldiers discovering that the empire was in their hands, frequently cut off such emperors as were disagreeable to them, and substituted others who promised more in the place of them. And at length it came to that pass, that the prætorians put up the empire to sale, and Didius Julianus* was not ashamed to bid for the sovereign command. This evil spread itself from the prætorian guards to the rest of the troops, many of which were quartered in the frontier provinces. And when one part of the army refused to acknowledge the right of another to create an emperor, there were often great disturbances, several emperors chosen at a time, and deadly contests amongst them for sovereignty. Such was the form of government

* He was a lawyer.

under the pagan emperors, and this military system endured till the time of Constantine the Great*.

In this period,

After the ascension of Christ, his disciples began to sow the seeds † of his religion far and wide; and the truth of the doctrine from heaven

* From the building the city of Rome, to the time of Constantine the Great, were 933 years, according to Sir Isaac Newton's computation: the vulgar makes it 1059 years.

† It is not possible to imagine the disciples, who had forsaken Jesus at his death, should at once take such an amazing turn, in favour of their master and his religion, as they did, if they had not been convinced of the truth of all they said. No difficulties were too great for them to encounter; their travels, fatigues, labours, tortures, deaths, are clear proofs of their sincerity, as was the amazing swiftness with which Christianity spread itself over the world, a proof not only of its superior excellency, but of the extraordinary powers of those who propagated it. The first Christians were so far from being superstitious, or enthusiasts (in the modern sense of the word) that they were on the contrary the freest thinkers of their times. And Justin, called the Martyr, who was himself a philosopher, embraced Christianity, because he found it to be the only true philosophy. The historical facts relating to it are shewn in a small book, intitled, *An Argument in Defence of Christianity*, taken from the Concessions of its most ancient adversaries, to stand upon the most convincing and unquestionable Evidence of all other Facts of so remote Antiquity. But nothing can exceed the force and clearness of that prophecy in the 53d of Isaiah, where so many circumstances of the Messiah are recorded, all agreeing to the person and character of Jesus, and of him only, who alone can be said to have laid down his life for all, to have borne our iniquities, to have seen the seed he had sown flourish after his death,
and

heaven was received not only by the Jews but by other nations. But as now the christian religion had increased greatly, and in a short space of time, with very swift advances, overspread almost the whole empire, the Roman emperors began to persecute it with the severest crelties.

The lies and calumnies generally spread abroad by the slanderers of the christian name gave the chief pretence for these persecutions; as that in their secret and nightly assemblies the christians practised only the most abominable evils, and formed conspiracies against the state *. Hence as often as any event arose that was injurious to the public, they believed that the Gods were angry, on account of the neglect shewn to the old superstition, under which the commonwealth of Rome had for so many years stood safe and unshaken. On the same account even the best emperors exerted great violence against the christians, as deniers of the Gods and overturners of all religion. The constancy of the martyrs did not abate but augment the fury of the persecution; for the very patience

and then having died, the work of the Lord was to prosper in his hand, and he to have a portion with the strong, because he hath poured out his soul unto death, was numbered with the transgressors, and bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

* How false these calumnies were, may be seen from the letters of Pliny, and Julian the apostate, as well as from all the Christian apologists.

with

with which they endured the most exquisite torments was accounted obstinacy *. Ten most grievous persecutions are reckoned under the heathen emperors, in which the infliction of penalties, tortures, and death so remarkably increased the number of believers, that in the time of Constantine the Great it was doubtful, whether in the Roman world the heathens or the christians were the more numerous. But as this constancy of the martyrs wonderfully promoted the growth of the infant-church, so the excessive zeal of some, and their eagerness to die for religion, produced no slight difficulties to the church militant, principally when they ran spontaneous and uncalled to the seats of magistracy, and delivered informations against themselves. By this procedure the persecution, when almost quieted, would often rage again with fresh violence: so that the governors of the church at length wisely determined to restrain this furious zeal by proper laws. Notwithstanding the general firmness, there were some who in the violent heat of persecution lost their constancy. Some sought preservation by flight, among whom was Paul, commonly

* It is impossible to read the accounts delivered by the ancients of the death of the apostles, and of Clemens, Polycarp, Irenæus, and some others, and not discern that their intrepidity, always attended with an amazing calmness of mind, was the effect of sincerity and conviction, and not of obstinacy, or any bad or malevolent quality.

called

AN INTRODUCTION

called the Hermit, who having retired to a cave, there gave himself wholly to a solitary life; of which manner of living he is accounted to be the founder, and the chief, or first, of the order of hermits*. Others subdued by torture, absolutely fell away from the faith. Of these there were different kinds, some, as soon as the persecution arose, before they were cited, went of their own accord to the temples and offered sacrifice; others would not submit to sacrifice to the idols till they were almost torn to pieces by torture; these were distinguished, by the name of sacrificers, or burners of incense, from the other delinquents, who were called *Libellatici* † (registered or exempts) because they obtained rescripts from the magistrates at a certain price, whereby they were exempted from the obligation to offer sacrifice in public.

With respect to the constitution of the primitive church, the first christians appointed officers of different classes to preside over their religious affairs, some of which were called bishops, some presbyters, and some deacons;

* He fled to avoid the persecution that happened under Decius in 253. The Order of the Hermits of St. Paul was instituted in Hungary by Eusebius, of Gran, in 1215.

† A name given to such Christians as had procured attestations from the Heathen magistrates, of their having obeyed the emperor's edicts. This exemption they sometimes solicited in their own persons, sometimes by others, who represented them.

and

and all elections of bishops as well as priests were made without application to the emperors, so long as they continued to be idolaters; though according to the principles of sound policy, the external government of the church ought to be in the power of the supreme magistrate. Thus every congregation exercised ecclesiastical jurisdiction, and when any error appeared, or any controversy, of too great importance for a single congregation to judge or determine, they took the opinion of the churches, or appointed a convention of the presbyters of the neighbourhood: and this was the origin of councils; the first of which was held at Jerusalem by the holy apostles themselves, for that very purpose. In these councils were enacted ecclesiastical laws and constitutions, which laws obliged all Christian congregations, determined all controversies that arose among them, and tried and condemned the positions of heretics. It is not our business here to discourse of heresies, a numerous brood of which was produced during this period, since they belong chiefly to sacred history. The most noted among the heretics were the Manichees, so called from Manès their author, who held two supreme or chief principles: their errors of old spread far in the christian world, and are not yet wholly extinguished. The destruction of Jerusalem, with the temple, and the dispersion of the Jews were evident testimonies to the truth

truth of the christian religion, and drove vast multitudes both of Jews and Gentiles to embrace it*. For in the sixty-seventh year of Christ, Vespasian, under the reign of Nero being sent against the Jews, who then were in rebellion, he subdued most of the strong places in Galilee, and in Judea, and laid siege to Jerusalem the capital; which his son Titus reduced by famine and razed to the ground in the year seventy: with the temple the Jews lost all that was glorious and august in their worship. The sacrifices being at an end, which could not be offered any where else than at the temple of Jerusalem, they retained only circumcision, and the observation of the Sabbath and of a few other ceremonies. However, they laboured to preserve for a long time some appearances of government, and even of monarchy: for in the third century, taking advantage of the moderation of the emperors toward them, they constituted an Ethnarch or ruler of their nation, whom they afterwards named the patriarch. After the example of the Jews

* Our Saviour foretold the destruction of Jerusalem. The dispersion of the Jews, and their continuance and preservation, though scattered over the whole world, as it never happened to any other people, and could not possibly therefore have been foreseen, but by the eye of Divine Providence alone, is a very evident proof of revelation. If the New Testament predictions were well considered, they would afford undeniable evidence for the Divine Authority of that book.

who dwelt in Palestine, the Babylonian Jews (for some had continued there even from the times of the captivity in Babylon) chose to themselves also a patriarch. So that there were two governors or patriarchs, one of which resided at Tiberias, the other at Babylon; the dissolution of these we shall relate hereafter.

This period afforded a plentiful harvest of excellent writers, and particularly during the life of Augustus, in which, after Cicero and Sallust, flourished Virgil, Ovid, Horace, Livy, and others, who carried the Roman eloquence to its highest elevation: a little after the death of Augustus it began to decline. Hence the Roman authors are distributed into four ages, namely, of gold, of silver, of brass, and of iron. To the golden age are ascribed the above-mentioned writers, and others who lived just before the times of Augustus. In the age of silver, Seneca, the elder and younger Pliny, Martial, Tacitus, Juvenal, Lucan, and some others, were of higher fame, the number which followed after these are generally reckoned as belonging either to the age of brass, or of iron. Among the Greeks the most illustrious were Strabo, Plutarch, Dionysius, and very many more whom I need not particularly mention. Among the Jews Philo, and the very famous writer of the Jewish antiquities and Jewish war, Josephus, were eminent, with Onkelos, who

L

made

made the Chaldee paraphrase of the Pentateuch, and some others.

The state of the fourth monarchy under the christian emperors, may be divided into three periods. The first containeth the whole time, that the Roman world was governed by one emperor only. The second begins with the division of the empire after the death of Theodosius the Great, and goes down to the extinction of the western empire under Augustulus. The third reacheth from the fall of the western empire even to the taking of Constantinople, and the downfall of the whole empire.

The emperors of Rome before the division of the empire were,

17th cent.

Constantine the Great, the first Christian emperor, who began to reign so early in the fourth century, as the year 306. The first years of his government were disturbed by the efforts of Maxentius in the west, and Maximin in the east, his colleagues in the empire, to root out christianity. But Maxentius perished miserably after he had been defeated in a pitched battle by Constantine: and this was the time in which the cross is said to have appeared in the heavens, with this inscription, *in hoc signo vinces*, under this banner shalt thou conquer.

Some time after Maximin died of a loathsome disease. Licinius, who had married the sister of Constantine yet survived, but not long after

after he also was slain. These tyrants being thus removed out of the way, Constantine openly professed the christian religion *. While he was yet a novice in the faith, he fluctuated between the sect or heresy of Arius, and the orthodox opinion of Athanasius, although he professed to be a resolute defender of the decrees of the council of Nice. By him the seat of the empire was removed from Rome to Byzantium, where a new city was raised, and from his name called Constantinople. He reigned till the year 337, when he died, leaving behind him three sons, Constans, Constantine, and Constantius.

Constantius †. The empire was divided among these sons of Constantine, and as is usual in such cases, an intestine war broke out with great fury. But Constantine, who began the war against Constans, was slain near Aquileja. Constans not long after met with

* He was baptized a little before his death. He was unfortunate in his family. He took off his brother-in-law Licinius for his treachery. He put to death his own son Crispus, on the complaints of his wife Fausta, and condemned her to dye, for having falsely accused his son.

† He had Italy, Africa and Illyrium for his share, and upon the death of Constantine, who made war upon him in 340, he came to the possession of Gaul, Spain, and Britain. He was the great patron of Athanasius. He was killed by the treachery of Magnentius, whose life he had formerly saved. He was 30 years old, of which he reigned 13. Constantius lived upwards of 40, and reigned 25 years. He took the Arian side, and persecuted the orthodox.

xvth cent. the same fate: so that Constantius remained sole emperor. Very grievous to the church was constantius, being devoted to the Arian sect. He died in the year 361.

Julian the Apostate having renounced the christian faith through the influence of some philosophers under whom he had studied at Athens, miserably harrassed the church. He abstained indeed from murder and shedding of blood, but he took another course; he fomented divisions among the christians, deprived their youth of a learned education, and stripped them of their fortunes: and whenever the christians complained of this injurious treatment he mocked them, craftily answering in these words of Christ himself, *blessed are the poor*. At length, that he might give the christian religion a deadly wound, he attempted to rebuild the temple at Jerusalem; but this undertaking was rendered impracticable, as Ammianus * Marcellinus a heathen writer testifies, by flames bursting out of the ground. By these things it appears

* I know not why baron Holberg left out the word *divinitus* (by divine interposition) unless he thought it an interpolation. But the same word is in David Zemach, only he, in the words immediately following, says, it was *because Julian perished in his expedition against Persia*. There is another rabbinical writer who says more of the matter, but then he speaks of the temple as built; but this could not be; and perhaps there was not time, from the edict to the death of this emperor, for many of the things said to have been done in that interval.

that the church could never be reduced to 17th cent. greater danger than by the crafty management of this emperor, who thus endeavoured to undermine the very foundations of the Christian religion: but he perished, after a short reign, in an expedition against Persia by a stroke from an unknown hand. As much as this emperor is blackened by the Christians, he is commended by the heathen writers, for his firmness, his moderation, his superiority of understanding, and other great qualities of mind. In which they reckon him second only to Julius Cæsar*.

4 Jovian was declared emperor by the choice of the army in the year 363. He pro-

* I shall add nothing more to what I have said in a note upon the argument in favour of Christianity, taken from the concessions of its most ancient adversaries, than this, that it was no proof of his superior understanding, if he as a philosopher really preferred Pagan sacrifices, &c. to Christianity; and if all religions were alike to him, it was very absurd in him, as an emperor, to attempt the abolition of the public, and then established religion; and, if possible, yet more absurd in him, as a general, to think of altering the religion of his army, when the bravest actions performed by it was owing to that religion, and they had long fought under the banner of Christ. And to shew how well the army was disposed to the Christian religion, when Jovian, who succeeded Julian, refused to command an army of Infidels, the soldiers all declared themselves Christians. Jovian was a much wiser man than his predecessor, restoring peace in eight months, when he was suffocated in his bed by the smoke of coals lighted in his chamber. Others say he was taken off by treason.

17th cent.

restored the Christian faith, restored peace to the church and died in the eighth month of his reign.

5. Valentinian on the death of Jovian obtained the sovereignty in the year 364. He caused his brother Valens to take the name of Augustus. He waged war with the Alemanni, the Saxons, the Quadi, and other northern nations, and died in Pannonia. But Valens who had a quarrel with the Goths, and being wounded in a battle, retired to a small cottage, where he was burnt alive by those barbarians. He was a constant protector of the Arians.

6. Gratian *, with his brother Valentinian II. began to reign in 375.

7. Theodosius †, surnamed the Great, adorned with all the virtues of a christian emperor, and though an excellent general, never engaged in any unnecessary war. He

* He was educated by Ausonius the poet, whom he advanced to be consul. He associated Theodosius with himself in the government of the empire. He defeated the Germans, and made a great slaughter of them, and was therefore called Allemanicus. He was a good friend to St. Ambrose; but fond of sports and hunting, and of foreign, rather than his own soldiers: he was murdered by Andragathias, general to Maximus, governor of Gaul.

† He stained his character very heinously, by abandoning the city of Thessalonica to his soldiers, who are said to have destroyed 7000 inhabitants, because one of his generals had been killed in a tumult there. The emperor had been baptized at this city 10 years before, upon his falling sick there, about the 44th year of his age. He died of a dropsy, about 60 years of age.

was

was a prince of singular goodness and humanity, and courteous to all. After he had reigned till the year 395, he died, leaving two sons behind him, who divided the empire between them, and this division subsisted till the destruction of the western empire.

After the legal establishment of christianity, the sovereignty became more safe as well as more holy, so that together with idolatry, an end was put to the murders and violent deaths of the emperors; but then, with respect to the enemy abroad, so infirm was the empire that it could scarcely defend itself against those who bordered upon it. Constantine greatly weakened the sinews of the empire, by transferring the seat thereof to Byzantium, and drawing off to the east those veteran legions, which defended the boundaries of the empire, by having their camps on the banks of the Danube and the Rhine. By which means, the western provinces being deprived of their security, were exposed to the incursions of the northern nations. The emperors also greatly injured the state by adopting too many colleagues, which divided the empire into factions, and excited endless divisions and intestine wars.

Constantine publicly professing the Christian religion, it assumed a different aspect: for the church, which till now had been perpetually exposed to troubles by the emperors, not only obtained a respite from them, but began to

14th cent.

raise its head, many following the example of the emperor, and becoming Christians. But this external advantage was followed, as is but too often the case, by a depravation of manners, and a departure from the true primitive simplicity. The good old humility disappeared by degrees, and a certain haughtiness, unknown till now, began to shew itself. This age beheld the Christians turning their arms against themselves, and orthodox and Arian, by turns; hurl their anathemas in different councils at each other.

Formerly the clergy were distinguished into three orders, bishops, presbyters, and deacons, to whom were added the acolytes, exorcists, readers, chanters, door-keepers: there were very few ceremonies, few religious rites, and the censure of the church against heretics, and those that fell off in times of danger, consisted only in a separation from them. But no sooner did religion appear dominant, than new and splendid dignities began to arise, and archbishops, metropolitans, exarchs, primates, archdeacons, &c. were appointed; sacred rites are multiplied, and severer punishments, as of death and banishment, are inflicted on those that err. The principal heretics in this period were, 1. The Arians, so called from their founder Arius, who, denying the Son of God to be of the same substance with his Father, by way of derision, called the orthodox, consubstantialists or homousians.

homoufians. 2. The Macedonians, who de- 17th cent.
nied the divinity of the holy Ghost. The
doctrine of the Arians was condemned by
the council of Nice, held under Constantine *
the Great in 325. That of the Macedonians
by the first council of Constantinople under
Theodosius the Great in 381.

As Clemens of Alexandria, Origen, Minu-
tius Felix, Cyprian and others, were famous
amongst the Christians in the former age,
so Athanasius, Arnobius, Eusebius, Cyril,
Gregory Nazianzen, Jerom and Austin in
this. Till now the study of the Hebrew
tongue had been neglected, and Jerom was
the first among the fathers, except Origen,
called Adamantius, who studied that language;
and to him we owe that Latin version of the
Old Testament according to the Hebrew text,
which is called the vulgate. Amongst the
pagans at this time flourished Libanius, Eu-
napius, Jamblichus, Ammianus Marcellinus,
Macrobius, Ausonius, Claudian, and others:
but the old sects of philosophers gradually
decreased in proportion as Christianity gained

* Constantine, in his old age, is said to have turned
Arian; and he is thought to have carried the council of
Nice by management, the members seeming to be of a
different opinion in the morning from what they were in
the afternoon. However, the Arians had their council
too of Rimini, held under Constantius, who gained a
subscription to the Arian opinions: and in this council
there were 400 bishops.

ground.

1st cent. ground *. As for the Jews, Jerusalem and the temple being destroyed, though they had lost all that was august and noble in their worship, they took some care to save what remained. For fearing lest the oral law, and their traditions, should in consequence of their dispersion be entirely lost, the authors of the Talmud laboured to preserve them in their writings. But we must trace their origin a little higher. After the death of Simeon the Just, there arose a set of doctors, commonly called Tanaim, or doctors of the Mishnah, who studied the traditions received and confirmed by Ezra. These traditions in time were so enlarged and augmented, that it was impossible to remember them all, and therefore under the reign of Antoninus Pius, it seemed advisable to the Jewish doctors, to commit these traditions to writing. Rabbi Juda, surnamed the Just, chief of the Sanhedrim, and rector of the college of Tiberias, first undertook this labour, and delivered the oral law in six books. This Work is called the Mishnah, and is received with the greatest veneration by all Jews; because they believe the oral was delivered at the same time with

* The true reason of this declension was no other than the excellency of the Christian religion, by the knowledge and practice of which every Christian became a philosopher. And Justin the martyr, who was a philosopher himself, and had tried every other sect of philosophy declared the Christian religion to be the only true philosophy.

the written law of Moses in Mount Sinai. 14th cent.

And as it is not less esteemed than the other, it soon began to be illustrated by a vast number of commentaries; these commentaries, together with the *Mishnah*, compose both the Jerusalem and Babylonish Talmuds; for the Jews of Babylon carefully imitated their brethren of Judea in publishing of commentaries. The *Mishnah* is the oral law*, the *Gemara*, commentaries upon that law, and the Talmud contains the whole work, the text and expositions. The books of the Talmud are extant at this day, and although they are full of the most marvellous and gross fables, are received with the highest reverence by the Jews.

* The *Mishnah* is so called from the word *Shenaim*, which signifies *two*, or *double*, *Shenijab second*, the *Mishnah* being next to the law. The law which all Israel heard in Mount Sinai is the written law, but Moses heard another law, say the Jews, from the mouth of the power of God, secondarily, which is the oral law. *Mishnah* signifies also study, and in particular the reading of the *Talmud*.

The *Gemara* is a supplement to the *Mishnah*, or its completion, and comes from *Gemar*, to finish or compleat. The *Mishnah* contains the law of the Jews, civil and canonical; the *Gemara* is an explanation of those laws, with the opinions and determinations of the rabbins. Of what use the study of these books is to divines, and other learned men, may be known by reading the *Ioma* published by Sheringham, the *Sota* by Wagenfeil, *Horæ Talmudicæ* by several authors, the works of the most learned Selden, Pocock, Guise, Reland, &c.

Talmud signifies doctrine, *Talmid* is a disciple or scholar, both from *Lamad*, to learn or teach.

After

ivth cent.

After the death of Theodosius the Great, the empire was divided between his two sons; one was made emperor of the west, the other of the east.

The western empire contained all Italy, Spain, France, Britain, Germany, Pannonia, and Africa.

Eastern provinces in Asia were Asia the Less, or Natolia, Arabia, Syria: in Africa, Egypt and Lybia: in Europe the several regions situate on the Danube.

WESTERN EMPERORS.

vth cent.

1. Honorius, in whose reign the excursion of the Barbarians was so great, as to threaten almost destruction to Rome. The Alans, Vandals, and Suevi, having plundered the Gauls, took possession of Spain in A. C. 400. And the Vandals erected a new kingdom in Africa, which lasted till the time of Justinian. In Italy, Alaric king of the western Goths took Rome itself, and laid it waste. After Honorius had thus long unhappily reigned, he died in 423.

2. Valentinian the Third, under whom every thing went to ruin. Africa was possessed by the Vandals, Gaul by the Franks, Spain by the Goths, and Britain by the Saxons. In his time Attila, king of the Hunns poured a most numerous army of Barbarians into the Roman provinces. But
after

after various conflicts and slaughters his army ^{vth cent.} was entirely cut off by Aetius. Soon after Aetius on his return being suspected by the emperor is beheaded *, and the emperor himself put to death by the guards of Aetius in 455.

3. Maximus, who caused the death of Valentinian the Third, and married his wife Eudoxia, is deprived of the empire by Genferic, king of the Vandals †. His successors were,

4. ‡ Avitus, Majorian, Severus, Anthemius, Olybrius, Glycerius, Julius Nepos, and lastly, Romulus

* It is said that Valentinian was in love with the wife of Maximus, and not being able to seduce her, he sent her husband's ring, which he had won of him at play, to her as a token for her to come to the palace, where he violated her. The husband, that he might the more easily accomplish his revenge, persuaded the emperor to put Aetius to death.

† This happened in less than three months after he had seized upon the empire. Genferic was invited by Eudoxia to revenge the death of her husband, and deliver her from the tyrant. Maximus fled, and was stoned by the people, or, as others say, killed by a foldier, and torn to pieces by the empress and her servants, and thrown into the Tiber. Genferic carried her and her two daughters into Italy, one of whom he married to his son Hunneric, the other he sent back to Constantinople, and married the mother; but afterwards sent them back at the request of the emperors Marcian and Leo.

‡ Avitus having reigned two years was deposed, and made bishop of Piacenza in Lombardy. Majorian, a brave man, and a scholar, reigned not quite four years and a half, and was murdered on the river Iria. Severus reigned four years, and was poisoned by Ricimer, who afterwards favoured Olybrius; but he was killed by the
Goths

vth cent.

Romulus Momyllus, surnamed Augustulus, in whose reign, Odoacer, king of the Heruli, reducing Italy, put an end to the western empire, in A. C. 476.

EASTERN EMPERORS*.

vth cent.

1. Arcadius.
2. Theodosius II.
3. Marcian.
4. Leo the Thracian.
5. Leo the boy.
6. Zeno Isauricus.
7. Basilisc.
8. Anastasius.

The

Goths in seven months. And then Glycerius reigned in 472, who in one year was deposed by Julius Nepos, and made bishop of Salona. Nepos was driven out of Italy by Orestes in 475, and was murdered at Salona by two men, set on by Glycerius. Orestes made his son Augustulus emperor, but Odoacer, who had been called in by Nepos, put Orestes to death, and shut up the little Augustus in a castle.

* Arcadius was a weak emperor, but a busy one in executing the laws against heretics. He died in 408, aged 31, and was succeeded by his son Theodosius II. in the eighth year of his age. He was rather a good man than a great emperor. Women governed in these and the following reigns. He died of a fall from his horse in 450, aged 49, and left no issue. Upon his death Pulcheria his sister married old Marcian, an experienced soldier, and she governed by him. He was severe against heretics, recalled the bishops banished by a council at Ephesus, and convened a general one at Chalcedon in 451, and died six years after, being 64 years of age.

Leo

The eastern empire, whose capital was ^{vth cent.} Constantinople, stood for many ages safe and unmolested, though it was not equal to old Rome in authority or grandeur. But the western empire was soon utterly destroyed. The cause of the destruction of this empire must, as is before observed, be ascribed to Constantine the Great, from the time that he transferred the imperial seat to the east. For as Italy and the western provinces had for their neighbours the most warlike people in the world, it required all the care of the whole empire to be employed in their preservation, particularly at the time when by means of the commerce with the Roman people military discipline was introduced amongst these nations, who in strength and fortitude had been

Leo the Thracian succeeded by the favour of Asper the general. He reigned 17 years and two months, and died in 474. Succeeded by his grandson Leo the boy, son of Zeno and Ariadne, who died in his cradle.

Zeno was a deformed wicked man, whom his empress Ariadne, to get rid of him, is reported to have ordered to be buried in one of his fits, though he was not really dead. She raised Anastasius to the throne, being sonder of him than of Zeno. He was a great patron of the Eutychians, and a persecutor of the orthodox. In his time Byzantium being besieged by a fleet of ships, they were burnt by burning-glasses, invented by Proclus the mathematician. This emperor was killed by lightning in the 88th year of his age. Basilisc was an usurper, had dethroned Zeno, but was detested for his impieties. Zeno advanced against him with an army, gains over his general, and pardons Basilisc, who, being sent into Cappadocia, perishes with cold and hunger.

always

vth cent.

always superior to them, and by art alone had hitherto been kept under. As soon as ever therefore they discovered the weakness of the empire, and had been successful in one or two expeditions, to change the indigence of their own country for the delights of the Roman provinces, such multitudes from all the north poured in as no force could repel. From the ruins of the western empire several new kingdoms sprung up, as that of the Visigoths in Spain, of the Franks in Gaul, the Vandals in Africa, Saxons in Britain, Ostrogoths in Italy; and in process of time some others, of which in particular, when the history of the fourth monarchy is finished *

The state of religion in this period was such that most of the northern nations who over-run the western empire, and divided the Roman provinces amongst them, were infested with the Arian heresy; the orthodox of this age lived under oppression. The Pelagians are reckoned amongst the chief heretics, so called after Pelagius their author, who, denying original sin, too sharply contended for the freedom of the will. 2. The Nestorians, whose author was Nestorius: they denied the

* If the reader is desirous of knowing more of these Goths, he cannot do better than read the sixth chapter of Sir Isaac Newton's Observations upon the Prophecies of Daniel, where that great man shews his knowledge of these things and times to have been equal to his knowledge of more ancient history, and all other subjects, for his knowledge was universal.

personal

personal union of two natures in one Christ.

3. The Eutychians, from Eutyches, who held there was but one nature in Christ, and that the divine nature. These errors were condemned by two œcumenical councils, that of Ephesus, which was held in 431 against Nestorius; and the other of Chalcedon in 451, against the errors of Eutyches.

On the decline of the Roman empire great ignorance and darkness as to good and useful arts began to invade the western world. A barbarous people, and untaught in letters, who in hostile troops then poured themselves into the western provinces of the Roman empire gave the first blow to learning: Academies were ruined, libraries burnt, and the learned forced to shut up schools and books. Nor were the christian priests less concerned in the destruction of letters: for as they had been loaded with injuries, when paganism prevailed, by the great philosophers, and found them still to be most troublesome enemies, they not only armed themselves against these teachers, but endeavour to forbid their writings, of whatever sort they were, as dangerous and pernicious to young students. Hence came the story, that Jerom, for having studied Cicero too much, dreamed that he was whipped with rods by the devil. Both hastened the destruction of letters; yet this age produced some learned men. Among the christians, Sulpicius Severus, Cyril of Alexandria, So-

M

crates,

crates, Zozomen, Theodoret, Isidore, Sidonius Apollinaris, &c. were of the first class. Amongst the pagans Zosimus and Olympiodorus were of greatest note.

The period in which the emperors reigned singly in the east after the downfall of the western empire includes many ages, beginning from the year 476, and extending to the year 1453, in which year Constantinople was taken by Mohammed the Second. The following emperors were the most famous.

vith cent. Justin, a Thracian by birth, and of obscure origin*, who adopted Justinian.

Justinian, who destroyed the kingdom of the Vandals in Africa, by means of Belisarius†, and that of the Ostrogoths in Italy by Narfes. Justin

* He was first a swine-herd, then a soldier, and at last emperor. It is said that Amantius, a rich courtier, put a large sum of money into his hands, upon the death of Anastasius, to buy the empire for him, but Justin laid it out in procuring the empire for himself. He reigned nine years, aged 77, and died in 527.

† Belisarius was one of the greatest and most successful generals that ever lived. He was victorious in Assyria, Africa, Persia, Italy, ruined the monarchy of the Vandals, and restored Africa to the Roman empire after it had been separated above 100 years from it, refused the kingdom of the Goths, and saved his master Justinian when frightened almost out of his kingdom by a faction of the Circus, called the green and light-blue. In return for all these services it has been said that the emperor put his eyes out, and that he, a poor blind beggar, laid at the foot of a bridge begging charity of passengers.—Date obolum Belisario.—But there is nothing of this in Procopius.

Justin the Second, who established an Exarchat in Italy, of which hereafter.

Mauritius, who with all his family had their throats cut by the tyrant Phocas.

Phocas *, who exercised the same barbarity in the course of his government as he had at first done to acquire it. viiith cent.

Heraclius, in whose reign Mohammed prince of the Arabians founded that abominable sect, which he and his posterity have propagated by force of arms.

Leo Isauricus, or Iconomachus, so called, because he persecuted the worshippers of images. viiith cent.

Irene †, who restored image-worship.

Nicephorus ‡, who dethroned Irene, and who acknowledged Charles the Great, king of France, to be emperor of the west. ixth cent.

Leo § the Sixth, surnamed Philosophus, pious. Cedrenus says he died in peace at Constantinople in 565. Justinian built the famous church of Sophia, and abolished the consulship. Justin II. succeeded in 566. He basely murdered his cousin Justin, and the senators Etherius and Addæus. He reigned 13 years, and died mad in 578.

* Phocas was at first no more than a centurion, or captain, in the army.

† She put out the eyes of her son Constantine, for taking the government upon himself when he came of age.

‡ He was defeated and killed by Crunus king of the Bulgarians, who made a drinking-cup of his skull.

§ See *Corpus Juris Civilis*, and p. 533 of Heineccius's *Historia Juris Romani*, by D. Ritter, the present learned professor of history in the university of Wittemberg.

xth cent. ' author of the constitutions named after him.
 ' Constantine IX. son of Leo VI. takes
 ' possession of the kingdom of Naples, after
 ' driving out the Saracens.

' Romanus, son of Constantine IX. was
 ' successful against the Saracens; but died of
 ' debauchery. Nicephorus Phocas, general to
 ' Romanus, married his widow and set aside
 ' his sons. He beat the Saracens and took
 ' Antioch; but he lost Apulia and Calabria,
 ' which were conquered by Otho the Great,
 ' the German emperor. Nicephorus was assassinated
 ' by his successor, John Limisces who
 ' associated Basilus and Constantine the two
 ' sons of Romanus, and bequeathed them the
 ' empire. Limisces gave a great overthrow to
 ' the Russi, but was poisoned by his chamberlain.

' Basilus and Constantine, recover Apulia
 ' and Calabria. They reigned together fifty
 ' years. Romanus Argyropulus the successor
 ' of the survivor, lost Apulia which was
 ' conquered by the Wormans.

' Alexius Comnenus, under whom the holy
 ' expeditions or Crusades were begun.

xith cent. ' John Comnenus, the son of Alexius succeeds.
 ' He was (a rare appearance in the
 ' eastern empire!) a good and wise prince,
 ' and hence commonly called *Calojoannes*.
 ' He had wars with the Turks; and being
 ' mortally wounded with a poisoned arrow
 ' appointed his second son to succeed him.

' This

‘ This was Manual Comnenus, the most
 ‘ perfidious of men. He poisoned the provisions
 ‘ which he had engaged to furnish for the
 ‘ army of the emperor Conrad; and betrayed
 ‘ his designs to the Turks against whom he
 ‘ was marching.

xiiith
 cent.

‘ Alexius Comnenus II. son of Manual suc-
 ‘ ceeds. His eyes were put out and he was
 ‘ deposed and then strangled by his cousin
 ‘ Andronicus, who had also assassinated the
 ‘ empress mother.

‘ Andronicus Comnenus ordered a general
 ‘ massacre of all the Latins at Constantinople;
 ‘ and his cruelties not being confined to them,
 ‘ he was at length torn to pieces by his own
 ‘ people.

‘ Isaac Angelus Comnenus succeeds. His
 ‘ territories were ravaged by the emperor Fre-
 ‘ derick Barbarossa. And Isaac was dethroned
 ‘ and his eyes were put out by his brother,
 ‘ Alexius the tyrant. But

‘ Alexius was dethroned by the Latins, who
 ‘ placed young Alexius the son of Isaac on
 ‘ the throne. This young prince restored his
 ‘ father. But the Latins not being paid the
 ‘ price stipulated for their service, they plun-
 ‘ dered Constantinople and set fire to it. Upon
 ‘ this the Greeks revolted and chose Alexius
 ‘ Ducas Murziflus for their leader, who having
 ‘ strangled young Alexius, was declared em-
 ‘ peror. But the Latins having taken Constan-

xiiiith
 cent.

xiiith
cent.

Constantinople deposed him and elected Baldwin earl of Flanders emperor A. 1204.

Baldwin was succeeded by four other Latin emperors till A. 1261, when Constantinople was retaken by the Greeks under Michael Paleologus emperor of Nice.

xvth cent.

And lastly, to pass over five others, who reigned during the latter end of the thirteenth, all the fourteenth and the beginning of the fifteenth centuries, Constantine Paleologus came to the throne under whom, Constantinople being besieged and taken by the Turks, the eastern empire was utterly destroyed, A. 1453.

The eastern empire was not only firm for some ages, but at times proudly lifted up its head, particularly in the reign of Justinian, who over-turned the kingdom of the Vandals in Africa, and of the Goths in Italy; but in length of time, as parts of it were torn off by one and another, it declined. The emperors themselves greatly hastened the ruin of the empire by their luxury and laziness. The Bulgarians claimed part of the empire, as did the Saracens, Syria, Palestine, Egypt, Cilicia, and the neighbouring regions, and after that, over-running the rest of the Roman world, they laid siege to Constantinople itself. These were followers of the false prophet Mohammed *, who, actuated by a fanatic rage, believed

* The character given of him by the pious and learned Spanheim, in his Ecclesiastic History, is thus rendered by Mr.

believed the whole world was destined for ^{xvth cent.} them, and therefore attacked the neighbouring nations with such fury as was irresistible. In this state of things, when the empire could hardly defend itself against these Saracens, Constantinople was taken by Baldwin earl of Flanders. There appeared also another emperor at Trebifond, that city and the regions round it being torn from the rest of the Roman empire. At last the Turks totally destroyed that empire. They first, in the reign of Heraclius, passing through the Caspian Straits, wandered far and wide over the east, embraced the Mohammedan superstition and were divided into several principalities. But the rest being broken and extinct, the posterity of Othoman alone took the lead, and ever since the Turkish sovereigns have assumed the name of Othomans. These Othoman princes, commonly called Turks, having subdued the greatest part of the pro-

Mr. Sale, in the preface to his translation of the Koran. It is certain Mohammed was richly furnished with natural endowments; beautiful in his person, of a subtle wit, agreeable behaviour, shewing liberality to the poor, courtesy to every one, fortitude against his enemies, and, above all, a high reverence for the name of God; severe against the perjured, adulterers, murderers, slanderers, prodigals, covetous, false witnesses, &c. a great preacher of patience, charity, mercy, beneficence, gratitude, honouring of parents and superiors, and a frequent celebrator of the divine praises.

vinces, possessed by the Saracens, swallowed up the rest of the Roman empire as it were in one and the same whirl-pool. Constantinople was taken by them in the year 1453, which has ever since been the imperial seat of the Turkish emperors. In the mean time things took an amazing turn in the west: we observed before that Italy was subdued by the Heruli, whose prince Odoacer*, out of contempt to Rome, fixed his seat at Ravenna. But these Heruli were soon driven out of Italy by the Ostrogoths, whose king Theodoric erected a new kingdom in Italy, and chose Verona to be the royal seat for him and his posterity. This kingdom lasted from 493 to 553, in which year Teia†, the last king of the Ostrogoths, being slain in battle by Narfes‡, it was destroyed together with the Goths.

* Odoacer was called into Italy by the friends of Nepos in 476. After shutting up the little Augustus he was very powerful, but behaved with great moderation, and though an Arian himself did many kind offices to the orthodox. In 489 Theodoric entered Italy, and defeated Odoacer, and forced him to a close retreat in Ravenna, and besieged him there for two years, and then being tired he made peace with him, but in 493 caused him to be killed at an entertainment.

† Totila, the predecessor of Teia was made king of the Goths in Italy about 541. He took Rome and abandoned it to his soldiers, and intended to have razed it to the ground, but was prevented by Belisarius.

‡ Narfes succeeded Belisarius as general of the armies of Justinian, and was little, if at all, inferior to his predecessor. Ætius and these two were as great generals as ever

Goths. Soon after the Long-bards erected another kingdom in Italy, and claimed under their king Alboin that part which is still called Lombardy. Their royal seat was at Ticinum, or Pavia, and their kingdom flourished from 568 to 774, when Charles the Great, having taken Ticinum, carried the last king Desiderius with him into France. Whilst the Lombards ruled in Italy, the rest of Italy was in subjection to Exarchs or Prefects, who were usually sent by the emperor at Constantinople. These in some measure resisting the Lombards defended the remains of the empire there, and fixed their seat at Ravenna. This Exarchat lasted 185 years, from 568 to 752, in which year Aistulphus, king of the Lombards, took Ravenna by force. The kingdom of the Lombards being extinct, all Italy, which had been comprehended under the Exarchat and kingdom of the Lombards, fell to the kings of France. Charles the Great was first proclaimed Patrician, and soon after emperor by the Roman people. And as they were prompted to this by the bishop of Rome, Charles, not to be ungrateful, gave a large part of the Exarchat and other lands to the bishops of Rome. This donation gave strength to the patrimony of these bishops: for as to what is related of the donation of Constantine

ever led forth armies, and according to common report as unworthily treated by those they served.

the

the Great, it has been long since exploded as a gross fiction. By what means the title of the western empire came to be translated from the French to the Germans shall be shewn in another place.

The state of religion in this last period of the empire was as follows,

The bishops of Rome contrived a peculiar kind of dominion in this period, which received great strength and advantage from the barbarous ignorance then prevailing in the west. When the princes of Europe for the most part were but novices in the christian faith, having received their religion from the Roman pontiffs, it was no difficult matter to persuade them, who knew not the true maxims of policy, that the bishops of Rome, as Vicars to Christ, and successors to Peter, chief of the apostles, had a right to prescribe laws to all the christian world. Formerly on account of the pre-eminence of the city of Rome, only the bishops thereof claimed a superiority in matters of religion. But when they saw the bishops of Constantinople, because the seat of empire had been translated to that city, assumed to themselves, for the same reason, the title of œcumenical or universal patriarch, they took another course, pretending they had a right to the primacy, as successors to the apostle Peter; and as there could be no discussion of this pretension, whilst such barbarous ignorance prevailed, they forged
certain

certain letters, which they called decretal, pretending they were published by the first bishops; by which means they persuaded those who knew no better, that the bishops of Rome were the sole vicars of Christ, and when in process of time, as learning revived, this fraud might be discovered, they every where introduced into the schools a new and trifling sort of discipline, by which the scholastic doctors, were, with the most subtle distinctions and tricks, to evade the force of their opponents. And things came to that pass at last, that the pontiffs, not satisfied with their supremacy, in matters of religion, arrogated to themselves the power of dispossessing princes of their kingdoms. Gregory VII. laid the foundations of this claim, a man of a haughty mind, whose ambition was scarcely to be satisfied by the possession of the world. His attempts were surprisingly favoured by an allegorical interpretation of the scriptures. As in this instance: It is found in the gospel, that the disciples on a certain occasion said, there were two swords; hence the doctrine of a twofold sword or a temporal and spiritual sword belonging to Christ's Vicars, who have therefore authority given them to hold these swords over all the princes in the world. As to other bishops, they were not all equal in power, but he, who dwelt in the metropolis, took the lead of the other bishops in that province. At first he was called Metropolitan,

and in the eighth Century he took the name of archbishop*. The most eminent of these metropolitans were four, of Rome, Constantinople, Antioch, and Alexandria, for they were the principal cities of the Roman empire. The next to these, on account of the ancient opinion of the sanctity of his city, was the bishop of Jerusalem. The rest vigorously defended their privileges against the bishop of Rome, and the controversies that arose thereupon, gave occasion at length to the schism between the Greek and Roman churches, which has continued to our times. But to shew in due order what were the most remarkable occurrences in this period, it is necessary to give a short sketch of the history of each respective age.

In the sixth age contentions grew hot between the bishops of Rome and of Constantinople, which caused the schism that followed. At that time several new festivals were instituted, as, of John the Baptist, the purification of the virgin Mary, the annunciation, the feast of St. Peter's chair. Temples were consecrated to the holy martyrs, and the Gregorian canon or regulation of divine worship was then published. The most noted heretics of that time were the Eutychians and Origenists. And the second council of Constantinople was held

* A title mentioned by Justinian in the sixth century. See Bingham's Antiquities.

under the emperor Justinian I. against the opinions of Origen * in the year 553.

In the seventh age appeared the false prophet Mohammed †, He from feeding camels, being married to his mistress, a rich woman, went into Palestine, where conversing with Jews and Christians, and jumbling all the different sects together, he contrived a new religion, with which the greater part ‡ of the world is at this day infected. The book that contains his errors, is called Al-koran, (or the Koran §.) Although the doctrine of Mohammed is nothing more than a heap of the grossest stories and prodigies, it spread in a short time, over the whole east. The causes

* Origen wrote a book against Celsus, which book shews him to have been a man of the most extensive reading and knowledge, a most judicious and acute reasoner, the ablest philosopher, and the best divine, excepting in some few opinions, of that or any preceding age.

† He was left very young to the care of an uncle, who carried him into Syria when 13 years old to instruct him in the business of a merchant, and afterward recommended him to Khadijah, a noble and rich widow, to be her factor, and she married him. Concerning Mohammed and his doctrine, see the Preliminary discourse to the learned Mr. Sale's excellent translation of the Koran.

‡ The greater part of the world is Pagan: but it is commonly thought that the Mahomedans are more numerous than the Christians.

§ The word *Koran* signifies reading, *lecture* or *collection*. So the Jews call their Scriptures Mikra, or reading. But all the learned Arabians, says Erpenius, contend for the use of the word, as meaning a collection of Sower, or chapters. *All* prefixed is the particle *the*.

of

of this progress were various. 1. The diffentions among christians. 2. Their impiety and ignorance of useful learning. 3. Their voluptuous manner of living, and depraved morals. At first his own countrymen rose against Mohammed, and forced him to fly to Medina; from this flight called in Arabic, Hej'ra, the Mohammedan æra took both its name and commencement: and the Turks reckon from the Hej'ra in like manner as we from the birth of Christ. In this age was the use of bells introduced, and the feast of All Saints enjoined. Amongst the heretics the most considerable were the Monothelites, who maintained that in Christ there was only one will: against them was held the third council of Constantinople, in which their errors were condemned in the year 680.

In the eighth age there were great disturbances on account of the controversies, then agitated, concerning the worship of images, which was condemned and approved by several councils. The fourth council of Constantinople held in 744 forbid that worship. The council of Nice, that was convened by the empress Irene, not only permitted but enjoined it. But afterwards that of Franckfort held by Charles the Great, is against the worship of images. Hence it appears upon how frail a foundation rests the infallibility of councils! The use of organs and of music in churches, was introduced in this age; also the

the christening of bells, and other things of like sort. They who were against the worshipping of images were called Iconoclasts*, and therefore this may be well named the Iconoclastic age.

In the ninth age was that schism between the eastern and western churches, which prevails to this day. Several sorts of superstition at this time infested the church. Among others the use of red hot iron † to prove the innocency of a person falsely accused.

In the tenth age were instituted the feasts of All Souls, and of the Ascension of the Blessed Virgin: the use of holy pilgrimages, holy water, and adoration of reliques were then introduced.

In the eleventh age began the holy wars, or expeditions of the cross, undertaken by the Christians, with a view to redeem the holy land, from the oppression of infidels. The first expedition was tolerably successful, for

* Image-breakers.

† Emma mother of Edward, called the Confessor, was subjected to this trial by her son, who, for a surmise of incontinency between her and Alwin bishop of Winchester, ordered her to pass blindfold over nine red-hot plough-shares, which she is said to have done unhurt. This trial was seldom used but to acquit the criminals and restore their characters, and was then managed with art to deceive the vulgar; of this William the Second surnamed Rufus, was so sensible that when fifty English gentlemen accused of deer-stealing had been acquitted by the ordeal trial, he swore the next time he would try them in his own court *meo judicio non dei*.

having

having driven out the Saracens, the cross bearers established a new kingdom of Jerusalem in Palestine. Various rites were now introduced, as the use of rosaries, of which Peter the hermit was the author. Several orders started up at this time, as the Cistercians, Carthusians and flogging friars.

The order of the Templars rose in the 12th age, from their founder * Hugo de paganis, as did the teutonic order † of knights,

* This Hugo with Godfrey of St. Omers established themselves into an order under the patriarch of Jerusalem, to defend pilgrims against infidels, and secure the passes into the Holy Land. They were called Templars because Baldwin II. gave them a house near to that place, where anciently stood the temple of Solomon. At first these knights were but nine, and lived on alms; in a few years they increased both in number and riches, and instead of protecting pilgrims plundered every body. For these and other vile offences many of them were executed, their grand master burnt alive, and their order abolished about 195 years after its institution. Their wealth (See the 11th note † in the history of France) was given to the order of St. John of Jerusalem, now of Malta.

† This order was founded after the model of St. John's of Jerusalem, by Henry king of Jerusalem, in favour of some German noblemen, who behaved with great gallantry at the taking of Acres, and on other occasions. They were to be of a noble race, to defend the Christian church and Holy Land, and be hospitable to pilgrims of their own country. They performed many great actions: they drove the pagans out of Prussia, and established Christianity in Russia. This order consists in 12 provinces, each province chuses a commander, and the 12 commanders a grand master.

and

and the order of the Carmelites * in Palestine. The Waldenses, so named from a certain merchant of Lyons, were reckoned amongst the most famous heretics of this age. The Romish clergy persecuted them with great severity, because they inveighed very sharply and strongly against the hierarchy, and proceedings of the Roman Pontiffs.

In the 13th century the doctrine of transubstantiation, which Paschasius Radbertus began to maintain in the ninth century, greatly triumphed; for then the feast of the body of Christ, Corpus Christi, and the adoration of the host were enjoined. To this age the tribunal of the inquisition † owes its origin, whose author was Dominic, the founder of the Dominican, as Francis was of the Franciscan order. Both orders increased to such a degree as in a little time to spread themselves over all Europe. The Dominicans were called preaching, and the Franciscans mendicant or begging friars. Several other in-

* They call themselves the successors of Elias and Elisha, because they were first placed on Mount Carmel by Almeric the pope's legate. They came into Europe in 1238, and have since greatly flourished in the Romish church.

† Never was so horrible an invention as this! The description given of it by Dr. Geddes, and by the reverend and learned Dr. S. Chandler, in his translation of Limborch's History of the Inquisition, give us the most dreadful ideas of that infernal court, and of the horrid superstition (for religion it cannot be called) that invented, and continues to support it.

N

stitutions

stitutions are referred to this age, as the taking away the cup from the laity in the Lord's supper, and the conclave of Cardinals.

In the 14th century, the authority of the see of Rome began to totter, on account of the schisms that arose among the Roman Pontiffs, which lasted near fifty years*, for there were two Popes at a time, the one at Rome the other at Avignon. But this schism being ended, the Popes recovered their former strength.

In the 15th age, the Pontiff's authority is again shaken by as great a storm: for when the council of Constans was called by Sigismund the emperor without the consent of the Popes, three Popes were deposed, and only Martin V.

* About this time, 1347, lived Nicolao Gabrini di Rienzi. He was the son of a man who kept a public house in the meanest part of the city of Rome, and his mother carried water about the streets; and yet from this low condition did he aspire to the government of Rome, and without money, friends, alliances, or military force, led by ambition, and supported by his eloquence alone, did he obtain the sovereignty of Rome, and though he could not, as he proposed, make her again mistress of the world, he however protected some, and awed other sovereigns, and was admitted an arbiter of kingdoms. At first liberty, justice, plenty, were the fruits of his government, but at last growing severe and cruel, particularly against the nobles, he was betrayed by one of his own relations, and as he endeavoured to make his escape in disguise, when the gates of the capitol were set on fire by the populace to force him from that retreat, he was assassinated and dragged through the streets of Rome. See his Life, very elegantly written by Pere du Cerceau.

declared

declared Pontiff. The council of Pisa claimed the same power and turned out of their office Gregory XII. and Benedict XIII. At length the Council of Basil was summoned to the same end, and having deposed Eugenius IV. declared Felix V. pontiff. Hence no frauds were neglected by after Popes, no schemes omitted for eluding this authority of councils, by which alone the power of the see of Rome could be kept within proper bounds. Such was the state of religion in this last period of the Roman empire.

As to arts and letters such barbarous ignorance had spread itself over the west in this period that learning was looked upon as heresy. We read of bishops who did not so much as know their letters. In the subscriptions therefore to some acts of synods these words are often to be met with. *As I cannot write myself, N. N. hath subscribed for me; or thus, As my Lord Bishop cannot write himself at his request I have subscribed.* Some priests were so ignorant * as not to know the form of baptism,

* The writer of the Repertorium, printed at Venice 1588, says, the word heretic, according to some, is derived from *erro* and *reſto*; according to others, from *erisco*, to divide, or *adhæreo*, &c. One being desired to produce a text from Scripture for the burning of heretics, cited this passage, ‘*hominem hæreticum devita*,’ turning *devitare*, to avoid, into *de vitâ tollere*, to put to death. Another, in a Discourse upon the human Soul, having found in a Greek author, ὁ τις ἀνὴρ αἰνός, ‘*mens humana*’
N 2 ‘*imma-*

baptism, and a priest of Bavaria is said to have baptized in these words, ' baptizo te ' in nomine patria, filia, & spiritua sancta,' (giving each word a feminine termination.) Nothing more was then required of the Priest than to say mass decently, or of the Bishop than to act his part, as a courtier or the general of an army. For few then were resident in their diocesses, but followed for the most part the camp or the court; and Christian, archbishop of Mentz, was turned out merely for his unskilfulness in military affairs. There were then no Universities, no libraries. And if any man dared to lift himself up above the vulgar, or oppose prevailing ignorance, he was blackened with the odious title of magician or Heretic. Charles the Great indeed attempted to dispel this thick darkness by founding the university at Paris, and buying books. But the French history testifies that, immediately upon the death of kings, the libraries were sold, so that Charles the wise was the first who established a perpetual library. Hence it is that most Latin authors, whose works were then remaining, have either perished or are now found imperfect. Others in subsequent times endeavoured to drive away barbarous ignorance but with very little success, for, in aid of barbarism, sophism

' immaterialis est,' and finding in his dictionary, that αὐλός was a flute or pipe, he had fifteen arguments, in an academical exercise, to prove the soul to be a whistle.

and

and trifling were introduced every where by the Pontiffs into schools, the conduct of which they assumed to themselves, that the minds of students being employed in quibbles and unprofitable questions, might be kept from the solid discovery of Truth. Peter Lombard bishop of Paris was the author of the scholastic divinity, who composed books of sentences or opinions: many more scholastic doctors followed him, who for such arrant trifles were dignified with the proudest titles, as angelic *, seraphic, &c. The emperor Lotharius introduced the Roman law into the schools in Europe as the pontiffs did the canon Law.

But things wore a different appearance in the east. The first princes of the Saracens did great injury to learning, but in process of time some of the Khaliphs were so inflamed with the love of letters that one might say the muses had fixed their Seat in Arabia. The most celebrated of the arabian authors were † Avicenna and ‡ Averroes, who translated

* Thomas Aquinas, who lived about the middle of the 13th century, was called the angelic doctor. His works are published in 18 vol. folio.

† Abou Ali Ebn Sina, a native of Bochara, is said to have written near an hundred books upon philosophy and medicine. He lived 58 years, and died at Hamadan in the 428th year of the Hegira.

‡ His true name is Ibn Rashid, a native of Cordova in Spain. He died A. Heg. 595, or A. C. 1198. He was

flated the works of Aristotle into Arabic, when they were utterly unknown in Europe. And, as the eastern empire was not obnoxious to so many changes, nor such frequent excursions of barbarous nations, the liberal arts were supported, though not improved with utmost skill, till the loss of Constantinople and the ruin of that empire. From thence forward there was an amazing change : for, Constantinople being taken, the Grecian scholars, exiled and scattered wide over the west, gave no small support there to the revival of letters. The east in its turn, possessed by the Turks, enemies to learning, falls into the same barbarism, under which the west had so lately groaned. Justinian was one of those Greek emperors to whom learning was much obliged. He digested all the Roman law into certain books, now used by many European nations in Schools and courts of Judicature. These books are four in number, the code, digests or pandects, institutions or elements, and the novells. He first published the code,

one of the ablest physicians and greatest philosophers that ever Arabia had. He was the first who translated Aristotle, and it was long before Europe had any other text of Aristotle than a Latin translation from the Arabic; and Thomas, and other schoolmen, made use of it. Hence we may ascribe the origin of the metaphysics among the schoolmen to the Arabians, who forced the Christians into those abstruse and unintelligible notions (not to call them a science) by their own commentaries upon the Greek philosophy.

which

which contains the imperial Constitutions. Next the digests or pandects, taken from the commentaries of the old lawyers, and other written responsa or opinions. In the third place he composed the institutes which contain the elements or principles of law. And last of all he wrote the novells, so called because they contain the constitutions published after the code. But not long after Justinian's time, his law began to be out of use in the west, and to give way to the laws of the Goths, Franks, Saxons and Lombards, contained in the body of ancient laws. And by degrees too they failed in the east as the latin language declined, and only the novells, being written in Greek remained. Such was the state of jurisprudence 'till the year 1186, when the Justinian law began once more to revive in the west. For the Normans being driven out of Italy by Lotharius II. and Melphi, a city of Apulia taken, that most ancient copy of the pandects was found, which was given to the inhabitants of Pisa, for having assisted him in war, thence called the pandects of Pisa, and afterwards, Pisa being subdued by the Florentines, the Florentine Pandects. The emperor Lotharius, by the advice of Irnerius, ordered them to be taught in academies, and observed in courts of Judicature. Thus the Roman law, that had been long obsolete, began to flourish again in the west, and to come into use together with the

pontifical or canon law, which consisted of decrees and decretals or letters of the pontiffs. These epistles, of the Roman Pontiffs, are contained in five Volumes. The first contains the Gregorian decretals, so named because they were reduced into one Volume by order of Pope Gregory. 2. The sixth of the decretals, from a sixth added to the five former decretals. 3. The Clementine, so called from the author of them, Clement V. 4. The extravagants of John 22. who was the author of them, so called because they are extra, exceed, or go beyond the volumes of the *jus pontificium*. And lastly, 5. Common extravagants, because they are not the work of one pope, as were those of John 22, but have different popes for their authors. These volumes complete the canon law *, which corresponds to the Justinian law.

Thus much for the origin, progress, and declension of the four monarchies.

It is hence evident that the Roman monarchy excelled the rest in power and duration. For, except a few, all the modern states and kingdoms, may be said to be fragments torn from the body of the Roman empire. Most european kingdoms are parts torn from the western empire. But, from the ruins of the

* Mons. Boehmer, of Hall in Saxony, published, in 1747, a body of canon law, in two volumes, inscribed to the present pope, which has gained him so much reputation in Italy, that many difficult cases have been sent to him for his decision.

eastern empire, hath arisen the vast empire of the Turks, which, besides some regions in Europe, contains the most famed and wealthy regions of Africa and Asia.

We are now to discourse briefly of these remains of either empire.

Out of the ashes of the western empire started up,

Germany, Spain, Portugal, Britain, France, Poland, Moscovy, &c. to which we add Denmark and Sweden, whose history we must not omit, though they were never subject to Rome.

OF GERMANY.

As the German empire is thought to have sprung up from the ashes of the western empire of the Romans, it seems necessary, for the sake of order and connexion, having concluded the Roman history, to proceed immediately to that of Germany.

Various epochas are assigned in the German history. But I shall consider Germany, first, according to its ancient state, and as it was under kings, secondly, under emperors.

Germany of old was divided into various principalities, and underwent the same fate with other nations in Europe, by being reduced to the condition of a Roman province. But on the decline of the Roman affairs, it became once more master of itself, 'till at length,

length, becoming subject to the dominion of the Franks, a great part remained long in obedience to Earls and Marquises of the Franks. But the empire of the Franks being divided amongst the three sons of Lewis the pious, Germany acquired a king of its own, Lewis. He had many successors, the last of whom was Henry the bird-catcher, (*auceps*) in whose reign, most of the towns of Germany were either built from the ground, or encompassed with walls.

—
 10th cent.

—
 11th cent.

The Roman empire in the west being extinct, the people of Rome, advised by their bishop, conferred the imperial dignity upon the French king, and at last upon the division of the empire of Charles the great, upon the sovereigns of Germany, of whom Otho was the first. These emperors may be distributed into two classes, the first class containing the emperors before the great interregnum, the second the emperors after that interregnum.

A SERIES OF THE EMPERORS OF GERMANY BEFORE THE INTERREGNUM.

10th cent. Otho I. who having put to flight the tyrants of Italy, against whom his aid was required, he is raised to the imperial dignity; and it was then stipulated, that the empire should for ever belong to the kings of Germany. But this

this accession of honour was of small advantage to Germany. Otho began his reign in 936, and died in A. C. 973.

Otho II. who was called upon to defend Italy against the Greeks, was deserted by the Romans, and fell into the enemy's hands, but, escaping, he revenged himself, as well on those who betrayed him, as on those who took him. He died in 983.

Otho III. who reigned till the year 1001.

Henry II. who was much disturbed by commotions in Italy. For his munificence to the clergy he was inrolled among the saints, and died in 1024. xith cent.

Conrade II. duke of Franconia, called Salicus*, is appointed successor to Henry by the princes of Germany. In his time there were very great disturbances in Italy and the empire, which he however happily composed. He was extinct in 1039.

Henry III †. commonly called the black, who bravely maintained his authority in opposition to the Roman pontiff. He died in 1056.

* Some authors have imagined that the French came from Franconia, that it was Pharamond's country, and that it gave birth to the *Salic* law.

† He married the daughter of Canute the Dane, king of England. He deposed three popes, Benedict IX. Gregory VI. and Sylvester III. and chose four others in succession, who were Clement II. Damasus II. Leo IX. Victor II. and made the citizens swear never to elect a pope without the consent of the emperor.

Henry

xith cent.

Henry IV. who had seven sharp contests with Pope Gregory VII. for the investiture. This investiture was the right of appointing bishops and abbots, which both of them claimed. The emperor said he would not depart from any privileges that had been exercised by his predecessors. Gregory insisted that the church alone had power to confer sacred benefices, and that such marketing of priestly offices, as was usual with princes, was infamous. Notwithstanding this pretence, it is manifest, from history, that the popes themselves exposed every thing to sale, so that they did not contend so much for authority or right as for the sake of abominable lucre. And as the Saxons had at the same time taken up arms against the emperor, Gregory thinking this a lucky opportunity to vindicate ecclesiastic liberty *, excommunicated Henry. And as the pontiff's thunder was at that time very efficacious, the emperor, being deserted by his own people, goes to Italy in the midst of winter. In a coarse woollen habit, and barefooted for three days, he stood a suppliant at the pontiff's gate, praying forgiveness, which he at length, though with difficulty, obtained. But the contention soon after broke out again. The emperor's son Henry rises against his father, who de-

 xith
cent.

* It might have been more truly called tyranny than liberty.

prived

prived by him of the empire died miserably in 1106.

xiith
cent.

Henry V. * revived the contests for the investiture. At first the emperor shewed himself a vigorous assertor of the imperial right, and, taking Pope Paschal, threw him into prison. At last, however, he surrendered up the right of investiture, to the great disgrace of the imperial dignity. He died in 1125.

Lotharius, the Saxon, who cultivated peace with the popes, and died in 1138.

Conrade III. duke of Suabia, who undertaking an expedition into Palestine, reached Jerusalem, but returned home without doing any thing. He died in 1152.

Fredericus I. † Ænobardus (called Barbarossa by the Italians) who rased the city of Milan,

* He was prevailed upon, by the pope, to take the imperial crown, during the life of his father, as he was assured the pope would not admit his succession, if his father died excommunicate. When the pope found himself Henry's prisoner, he gave up his claim to the imperial rights, and, to confirm this agreement, broke a consecrated host into two parts, giving one to the emperor, and taking the other himself, wishing he might be separated from Christ who broke this solemn engagement, which was soon done by him that made it. He married Maud, daughter of Henry I. king of England, but left no issue by her.

† Red-beard. Pope Adrian was very angry with him for not holding the stirrup properly, on the right side, as his holiness was getting on horseback. He had an excellent memory, and was very brave. He obliged the count Palatine,

AN INTRODUCTION

Milan, which was then labouring a change, to the ground. Pope Alexander III. created him as much uneasiness as Gregory VII. had Henry. Having put an end to the war in Italy, he marched with an army towards Palestine, where, passing a river in Cilicia on horseback, he was drowned in 1189.

Henry VI. succeeded Frederic*. When he received the imperial diadem from the hands of pope Celestine at Rome, Celestine, after he had put the crown on his head, kicked it off again, with his foot, to shew his power over the majesty of the empire.

After his death, which happened in 1198, the nobles were divided in their choice of a successor, some were for conferring the imperial dignity on Philip, the brother of Henry, others on Otho, duke of Saxony. After a long war the contending parties came to this agreement, that, so long as Philip lived, Otho should not assume the regal title †.

Palatine, who had rebelled against him, to carry a dog by way of penance, but was himself forced to submit to many indignities. According to the account given by Otho, bishop of Frisingen, a near relation of Barbarossa's, he was drowned as he was bathing in the river Cydnus, now called *Cara Su*.

* Surnamed Asper, married Constantia, daughter of Roger, king of Sicily. This lady was a nun, and had actually taken the vow, but the pope dispensed with it, on condition that Henry should turn out Tancred, king of Sicily, which he did.

† Otho married Phillip's daughter, and had the succession secured to him.

Philip

Philip was killed * by a certain Count Palatine, in 1208. And Otho, deserted of all, died in 1219.

xiiith
cent.

Frederick II. † a brave prince, and the last assertor of the imperial majesty in opposition to the popes. In his time Italy was split into two factions, viz. the Guelphs, who took part with the pontiffs, and the Gibelines, who stood firm to the emperor. Italy was long and miserably vexed with these factions: at length it came to this issue, that in the council of Lyons the empire was taken from Frederick. But the emperor did not despair upon this misfortune. It is reported, when the news of it was brought to him, he took the crown out of a cabinet, and burst out into this expression, It is safe yet! Frederick died in 1250.

* Basely murdered by Otho of Wittelsback at Bamberg, who stole into his chamber, when he was sick, and had been bled in both arms.

† He was crowned at Rome, gave the dukedom of Fundanus to the church, and confirmed its privileges, made a voyage to Palestine, and returned with honour, having frightened the enemy into advantageous terms for the Christians. For these good offices he was five times excommunicated, and sequestered from all his royalties and possessions, made known by a bull, to be read in all the churches, which began with these words out of the revelation of St. John: *Ascendit e mari bellica bestia, a warlike beast riseth out of the sea.*

THE

THE STATE OF GERMANY DURING THE GREAT INTER- REGNUM.

After the death of Fredrick II. things were in amazing confusion, by divisions among the German nobility, and their dissensions about the choice of a new emperor. All laws, divine as well as human, were then confounded, and villainies perpetrated every where with impunity. The cities, situate on the Rhine, therefore were compelled to enter into an alliance, against the violence of robbers, to which alliance, afterwards, other princes acceded. It is thought this disturbance gave occasion for the institution of seven electors, who should have the sole right of chusing the emperors, which when it became customary, was, at length, established by the golden bull of Charles IV. For their opinion is now exploded, who held the institution of the seven electors to have been in the times of Otho III.

The emperors of Germany after the great interregnum were,

xiiith
cent.

Rudolph I. of Habsburg, from whom the present arch-dukes of Austria are descended, was chosen emperor A. 1273. In his time the majesty of the German emperors declined in Italy; for Rudolph, though often invited into Italy,

Italy, did not chuse to go (making use of the fox's reply in the fable, *me vestigia terrent*, I see no returning back again traced out by the footsteps of those who have gone thither before me) so far from it, that he very readily sold many cities their liberties at a certain price: hence the origin of the several republics in Italy. He also commanded public and private acts, which were usually written in latin, to be now published in German. This very prudent emperor died in the year 1291.

Adolphus of Nassau, who being at variance with Albert of Austria *, fell in a battle against him at Spire, 1298.

Albert slain by John duke of Suabia, 1308.

Henry VII. of Luxemburg, who is generally reported to have been poisoned by a monk †, who gave him the consecrated wafer mixed with poison.

Lewis of Bavaria. After an interregnum of fourteen months, the princes being divided into two parties, the majority are for Lewis

* Albert, son of the emperor Rudolphus, disappointed of the succession to the empire, made war upon Adolphus, and slew him with his own hand.

† Barnard Politian, a Dominican friar. If the priest has the power to change the substance of the wafer into the real body of Christ, which cannot be of a poisonous or hurtful nature, he need not fear any mixture of poison in the wafer, and may therefore give, if he dare to venture the trial, a stronger proof of his believing he has a power to change substances by one fact of this sort, than by a thousand subtleties.

O

duke

 xivth
cent.

AN INTRODUCTION

duke of Bavaria, the rest for Frederick of Austria: war broke out between them, in which Frederick being conquered and taken, Lewis is delivered from his rival. But as he acquired the empire, contrary to the pope's order, he was excommunicated * and deprived of it, and Charles marquis of Moravia chosen in his stead. Lewis died 1347. Charles IV. who, following the example of Rudolph, sold all he could in Italy: he enacted the golden bull †, which contains the

* He made a pope of Peter Ramuchius, a Franciscan, who declared pope John XXII. to be an heretic, and therefore no pope. At last Lewis would have been glad of a reconciliation; but the terms were too hard, to surrender all to the church, and depend absolutely on its favour; he would not submit, is therefore excommunicated, and Charles of Luxemburg chosen emperor.

† The Bull contains 30 chapters, of which 23 were confirmed by the assembly of the states, in presence of the emperor, in January 1356, at Nuremberg; and in a diet at Metz, the same year, seven more were added to it. The first and second relate to the election of a king of the Romans; the third assigns the places of the archbishops of Mentz, Cologne, Treves; the 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th, 11th, 12th, 13th, 18th, 19th, 20th, 21st, 22d, 23d, 26th, 27th, of the rights of the electors; the 8th, of Bohemia, and its inhabitants; 9th, of mines in Bohemia, and territories of the electors; 10th, of coinage; 14th, of the duty of vassals to their lords; 15th, of conspiracies; 16th, of pretended burghers; 17th, of unlawful violences, appeals and challenges; 24th, or first enacted by the diet at Metz, orders the punishment of those who shall attempt any thing against the lives of the electors; 25th, prohibits the dismembering of electorates; 28th, of the emperor's and elector's tables; 29th, of fees to the imperial

the *jus publicum* or common law of Germany, and the order for the election of emperors.

Wenceslaus, son of Charles, a prince held infamous for his slothfulness and other vices, for which he was dethroned by the electors. After the loss of the empire he lived long an inglorious life in his hereditary kingdom of Bohemia. In the reign of Wenceslaus, that instrument of war, called the bombard*, is said to have been invented.

Rupert, who after a short reign departed in 1400.

Sigismund the brother of Wenceslaus, a prince of excellent parts. Under the auspices of this emperor was celebrated the council of Constance, for the removal of Schism from the church. John Huss † was summoned to

xvth cent.

this imperial officers from those princes who pay homage for their freeholds; soth, that the electors are to understand Latin, Italian, German, and Slavonic. This Bull is called Golden, from a seal of gold in the form of a bull.

* That species of bomb, called *Carcase*, was invented by Mons. Geisler of Dresden, in 1675. Red-hot bullets were first used by general Wrangel at the siege of Bremen. Gun-powder is said to have been invented by Schwartz, a German cordelier, about the year 1380. Schwartz signifies *black*. But the ingredients and effects of gun-powder are mentioned by Roger Bacon, the Englishman, in his *opus majus*, published by Jebb. Bacon, who lived to a very great age, died in 1284. His *opus minus* is in the archbishop's library at Lambeth. There are other MSS. of his at Oxford never published.

† He held the same opinions as Wickliff and the Waldenses, and was prevailed upon by Sigismund to appear

xvth cent.

this council, and burnt contrary to the emperor's engagements. Worn out with many defeats by the followers of Hufs, Sigismund died in 1437.

Albert II. an Austrian *.

Frederick III. in whose reign Constantinople was taken by the Turks. The art of printing was then invented about the year 1440, by John Fust of Mentz. Frederick was a very pacific Prince † and extremely covetous. He died in 1493.

Maximilian I. a man of wavering dispositions, and very unlike his father; for from his excessive prodigality he was always in want and maintain his doctrines before the council of Constance, that emperor granting him a passport, and engaging for his safety. His examination is said to have taken up seven months; at last he was condemned to be burnt alive, the execution of which he underwent with great firmness of mind: as for the emperor, it was not judged necessary for him to keep his word with an heretic.

* He reduced the Moravians, and drove the Poles out of the empire.

† He favoured Podiebrachius, a friend to the Hussites, in opposition to Matthias Corvinus, declared king of Bohemia by the pope; but the emperor refusing him the investiture, war ensued, and Matthias took Vienna, whilst Frederick travelled up and down, writing in every inn, that oblivion was the greatest happiness under irremediable misfortunes—*‘Rerum irrecuperabilium summa felicitas oblivio.’* However, Albert, duke of Saxony, obliged him to surrender up Vienna, and restore peace to the empire. This Matthias was a very brave and learned prince, upon whom the following fine epitaph was made by Antony Thibald:

*‘Corvini brevis hæc urna est, quem magna fatentur
Facta fuisse Deum, fata fuisse hominem.’*

of money, and was therefore called by the Italians *Pochi-denari* (lack-penny.) Hence though he attempted many things, he finished nothing, being without money: otherwise a prince deserving praise, and such a friend to justice, that when he passed those places, appointed for punishments, he saluted justice, saying, *salve justitia*. He said of his preceptor Peter, who had wasted too much of his time, in teaching him logic, if my preceptor was now living he should be punished for his futility. He gave an account of his own actions in a book intitled *THEUR DANCK*. He died in 1519.

xvith
cent.

Charles V. grandson of Maximilian, scarcely inferior to any of the German Cæsars for power or valour. Under his reign Luther's reformation made a great change of affairs in Germany: but that it may be understood how it could possibly happen, that a plain monk should give such a blow to the Roman pontiff, it will be worth while to consider what was the face of things before this reformation. As learning revived, darkness began gradually to be dispelled, by which, as by an indissoluble knot, the popes held the entangled minds of men, so that they could not discern the yoke, thus iniquitously imposed upon them. And although the doctrine of John Hufs* was stifled in the very birth, yet it

* In allusion to the names of Hufs and Luther, the former of which signifies a goose, the latter a swan, the Germans

xvith
cent.

it remained in the minds of many. When therefore the fame of Luther was made known to the emperor Maximilian, he is reported to have said, that the Monk should be taken great care of, for he should some time or other make good use of his labours. Nor was his successor Charles V. thought to be averse to his opinions, whereby the yoke might be abolished, and those vices removed, which at that time were arrived to the highest pitch, under those most flagitious and most turbulent pontiffs Alexander VI. and Julius II *. The way thus open, and the minds of men thus

Germans relate, that when Hufs was burnt, he said, Though they roasted the goose now, an hundred years hence from his ashes should arise a swan to defend his doctrines; and that the day before Luther fixed up 95 propositions against the pope's indulgencies, sold by Ticius, the elector of Saxony dreamed, that a monk, attended by saints, came from heaven to demand leave to fix up some characters on the gates of the university of Wittemberg, legible at a vast distance, and written with the quill of a Bohemian goose, so long as to reach Rome, the pope's ears, and shake his triple crown. His apartment is shewn to this day in the university of Wittemberg; the sides of which are filled with the names of those who have visited it; amongst others, I saw the name of Peter the great, written by himself; over which is now a small glass to preserve it. The professors here are men of good learning, and very obliging to strangers.

* Maximilian, who was excessively fond of hunting, was used to say of himself and pope Julius, O eternal God! If it was not for thy careful providence, how ill would the world be governed by me a poor hunter, and that rascal Julius! "O deus æterne, nisi vigilares quam male esset mundo, quem regimus nos, ego miser
"venator, & sceleratus ille Julius!"

disposed,

disposed, Luther could not have found a season more apt for his purpose, who was a man of invincible courage, not to be terrified, and who began to inveigh against the indulgencies of Leo the 10th, sold throughout Germany in 1517. But soon after he opposed the authority of the pope and other errors. Luther was therefore cited to appear at a meeting at Worms, but refusing to recant, he was banished; however the elector of Saxony protected him. In the mean time, the tenets of Luther spread every where in Germany, and were received by many of the Princes. The * Smalcaldians, called protestants, enter into an alliance with one another, protesting against the emperor's edict published at Spire. And when they perceived that the emperor was carrying on designs, against the liberties of Germany, under pretence of religion, they raised a great army, under the joint command of John Frederick, elector of Saxony, and Philip, landgrave of Hesse. But the emperor attacked and routed this allied army at Muhlberg †. The generals themselves were taken in the battle. Thus it seemed to be over with religion and liberty in Germany; but new adversaries arising, and the emperor

* Smalcalde, a city of Franconia, subject to the landgrave of Hesse-Cassel. It is famous for the convention of the protestant princes, who having assembled there in 1530, 1531, 1535, and in 1537, called to their assistance Luther, Melancthon and others.

† In 1547.

27th
cent.

being reduced to great streights, a peace is ratified at Passau in 1552, by which the protestants were permitted the free exercise of religion: this peace was also confirmed at Aulburg in the year 1555. The reign of Charles V. * was moreover greatly distinguished,

* In 1527 his army plundered Rome, for 2 months, in which business the Spanish catholics were observed to be more zealous than the German protestants. The emperor, who was cunning and deceitful, pretended to be angry, all the while he encouraged these proceedings. He ordered prayers to be put up for the pope, even whilst he had him in custody. The pope ransoms himself, and peace is also concluded with Francis I. whom he had taken prisoner, in the battle of Pavia, in 1525. After this peace, in 1529, he drives Soliman from Vienna, and marches into Africa, where he restores Mulei Hassan to Tunis, in 1535. After this, he returns to Italy, and enters Provence with a great army, but is forced back by the Boors, and narrowly escapes with his life. These disturbances were quieted by the peace of Nice in 1538, and he passes thro' France to punish the inhabitants of Ghent; in France he is received with all the marks of friendship, and hospitality and magnificence, and is attended by the king himself to Paris, and by his sons through France; yet notwithstanding which, he broke his word with him, and deceived him about the promise of Milan. He is equally censured by catholics and protestants, doing nothing from a principle of religion, but with a view of gaining some advantage from their disturbances. In 1541 he went into Africa against Barbarossa, but without success. He is said to have undertaken fifty voyages, nine into Germany, eight into the Mediterranean, seven into Italy, six into Spain, four into France, two into England, Africa and at sea. At last he resigned all in the year 1555, at Bruxelles, after a reign of 38 years and almost 3 months, and retired into a convent in Spain. This emperor gave rise to that droll character on the Stage, called after him Carlo.

TO UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

207

ed, by the disturbances the Boors raised in Germany. They were commanded by Muntzer, who was taken at Frankenhuse and beheaded. His followers displayed banners, before their troops, with wheels painted on them, whence the leaders of sedition are called RADERS-FUHRER. At last Charles V. resigned in favour of his brother Ferdinand.

xvith
cent.

Ferdinand I. under whose very mild government Germany was in a state of tranquillity. He died in 1564.

Maximilian II. who reigned till 1576 *.

Rudolph II. who died in 1612.

Matthias. In his reign there were great disturbances on account of religion, and these laid the foundation for the thirty years war, that followed; the first flames of which broke out in Bohemia, where three great men, who spoke in the emperor's name, were thrown

xviii
cent.

Carlo-quinto or Harlequin. Till his time, swordsmen could bear contradicting, but he happening to say that he who could take the lie, was no gentleman, this has ever since been reckoned a sufficient reason for cutting of throats.

* He was a great friend to toleration, asserting it to be an invasion of the rights of heaven, to controll the consciences of men. And when the pope threatened him with the loss of the empire, he said he preferred the hopes of heaven to all the earth. He encouraged the ministers to give the cup to the laity, in the sacrament, and took it himself; saying, he would not receive the sacrament by halves. He was angry with the pope for creating Cosmo duke of Tuscany, but afterwards confirmed the title to him.

out

xviii
cent.

out of a window. Matthias died in the beginning of these tumults 1618.

Ferdinand II. The rebel Bohemians refused obedience to him, and transferred the kingdom to Frederick Elector Palatine; but Frederick, being conquered by the emperor at mount Albus, near Prague, is deprived of his new government. Ferdinand, elated with this success, marched, in a hostile manner, through all Germany, as if it had been to pursue his enemy of the Palatinate. The protestant princes therefore call to their aid Christian IV. king of Denmark, and, soon after, Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden. The war was carried on, with various success, till, at the earnest desire of both parties, a reconciliation was brought about under Ferdinand III. and peace ratified with the Swedes at Osnabrug, and with the French at Munster, 1648. By this peace the authority of the German princes, and the protestant religion, were established.

Leopold, who carried on a successful war against the Turks and the rebels in Hungary. But his greatest wars were with the French*, for both laying claim to the kingdom

* His wars with the French were twice accommodated, in the most solemn manner, by the treaties of Nimeguen and Ryswick: the succession of Spain did not become the avowed cause of quarrel till the last, which produced the treaty of Utrecht. And it ought never to be forgot, that tho' the maritime powers bore the burden in chief of the two last, it took up a negociation of some years, to prevail with the court of Vienna to make peace with the Turks;

dom of Spain, almost all Europe was in arms: He died in 1705.

xviiith
cent.

Joseph carried on the war against the French for the Spanish succession, but died before it ended, in 1711.

Charles VI. in whose reign the peace was made, as is shewn in the history of Spain; and as he, soon after the peace, endeavoured to extend the borders of the empire against the Turks, he is to be esteemed the most powerful of the emperors after Charles V. But afterwards, in Hungary, he experienced the instability and fickleness of fortune in war, forced to yield Belgrade to the Turks, by the peace, made there in 1739, and died the year after. The Spaniard, Saxon, Bavarian and Prussian, claiming the lands of the deceased, occasioned a very dreadful war.

Charles VII. made emperor from elector of Bavaria, waged war unsuccessfully against the Austrians, and, after three years trial of adverse fortune, died.

Francis Stephen, the husband of Maria Theresa, daughter of the emperor Charles VI. grand duke of Tuscany, concluded the peace at Aix la Chapelle, and now reigns.

Turks; that the united efforts of the confederates might be the more vigorous on the Rhine, and in Flanders: a war with the infidels was attended with a prospect of enlarging the emperor's hereditary dominions, and also drew some convenient douceurs from Rome. Considerations which ever had, and ever will have the chief sway in the councils of the imperial court.

Of

Of the present state of Germany we may observe that as to the form of government, there is no other that can be compared with it *. The emperor of Germany is indeed the chief

* Concerning the religion of the empire, it is to be observed, that there are three cults, which are rather established than tolerated, the *catholic*, as it is falsely called, for it is so *partial* as even to withhold the liberal hand of God, and put limits to his mercies, by excluding all from happiness and heaven, that are not of it. The other two are the worshipping according to Luther and Calvin; and beside these no other worship is tolerated. It is but a melancholy reflection to all, who set a just value upon religious and civil liberties, to consider the declining state of Protestantism in the world. The electors of Saxony, who had so strenuously, from the first, promoted, and had so long continued to support the protestant religion, or gospel reformation, are now become catholics. And though the electors of Brandenburg and Hanover (Kings of Great Britain and Prussia) still remain protestants, the house of Hesse-cassel, (which is one of the most considerable in the empire, and which had also a considerable hand in planting and protecting the reformed religion in the empire) has lately had an apostacy to lament, of the most affecting nature: an apostacy to the old superstition, so dangerous to princes, and so oppressing to their subjects! and which is scarce to be accounted for on any one principle of common sense. Some hopes however remains for the consolation of the reformed, that the pious endeavours of his majesty, our most gracious sovereign, together with those of the Landgrave, now governing, will hinder the tetter from spreading, and otherwise prevent the mischiefs to be expected from it. And the people of England, if they have not lost all sense of feeling, as well as all use of history, will continue to oppose every designing and iniquitous attempt against reformed religion; whether it be by an open declaration in favour of Popery, or the paving the way for the return of it, by opposing the christian

chief, but his power is restrained by so many laws, that he may rather be called first amongst his equals, than lord of all. The princes are not subjects, nor independent, nor vassals, and therefore the form of this government is neither monarchical, nor aristocratic, nor democratic, as Puffendorf long since observed, in his discourse on the state of the German empire; where he says, Germany is a kind of irregular body, which, in course of time, by the indulgence of emperors, the ambition of princes, and turbulence of priests, from an uniform kingdom was reduced to this irregular form. It approaches the nearest however to a certain system of confederate states, in which one, as chief or head of the confederacy, adorned with royal ensigns, appears more splendid than the rest. The power of the emperors is limited by capitulations, imperial laws and customs, and privileges of the states. At what time the capitulations commenced is uncertain. The German history indeed shews that the power of the emperor has been a long time restrained by laws. The emperors are required, by the golden bull of Charles IV. to preserve the rights of the princes electors. But before Charles V. there is no copy of a capitulation to be found. The rights of the princes formerly were unchristian religion, and by endeavours to render the prevailing religious cults, established or tolerated in this country, of no moral or even political advantage to it.

certain,

certain, and proportioned to the greater or less authority of the emperors, for their power was supported rather by prescription or usage, than by any written law, till, at length, all was clearly and distinctly settled by the treaty of Westphalia. The empire was once hereditary, afterwards the right of election was in the nobles, and at last, by the golden bull of Charles IV. conferred upon seven electors only. If any thing should arise that concerned the whole state, it must be deliberated in a convention of all the states. The emperor, or, in his absence, the king of the Romans, calls this convention. The king of the Romans is vicar general of the empire, who, when the emperor is absent or hindered, governs the commonwealth, and, on the emperor's decease, succeeds him without any further election. The constituent members of the empire are electors, dukes, marquises, princes, archbishops, bishops, counts, barons and free cities. Some of these cities are immediately under the empire, and are called imperial free cities; some only mediately, other princes claiming a right over them. Germany is at this day divided into ten circles, each of which have the privilege of chusing a general for themselves. This division into circles was appointed by Maximilian I. and principally regards the more convenient security of public peace. This is all that need be said of the *jus publicum*, or
common

common law of Germany, the study of which is enough for any one man. There are many other rights, as yet doubtful and undetermined. Germany therefore, which on account of its multitude of cities and inhabitants, might provoke the envy of all Europe, is yet, on account of the everlasting disputes among the states, very often exposed to the insults of other princes.

OF SPAIN.

The Spanish history is divided into several epochas; the first contains the ancient state of Spain under the Carthaginians and Romans, the 2d under the Goths, 3d under the Saracens, 4th under their own monarchs.

Spain was anciently divided into several petty states, and therefore exposed to the insults of other nations, which, at the same time, infested this region, and fixed their habitation in it. The chief of these were the Celts, who, coalescing with the Iberians, gave it the name of Celtiberia. After this the Carthaginians subdued the better part of Spain: But they being driven out by the Romans, all Spain became part of the Roman empire, and continued in that subjection, till the fall of the western empire*.

In
* Spain anciently abounded in mines, and yielded 600,000 pound weight of silver, and 10,000 pound in gold,

vth cent.

viiith.
cent.

In the decline of the Roman empire, Spain was possessed by Vandals, Silingæ, Suevia and Alans, and lastly by the Goths. The empire of the Goths was in its most flourishing state under Ricaredus, but declined under king Vitiza, the Goths then degenerating from the virtue of their ancestors, sinking into luxury. At length under his successor Roderic their empire was plainly at an end: for in his reign the Saracens, who dwelt in Africa, made an irruption into Spain, where having destroyed both king Roderic, and his army of Goths, they subjugated almost all Spain, and put an end to the empire of the Goths, which had stood unshaken for about three hundred years in Spain. This happened A. C. 714*.

gold, besides what was coined. Hannibal opened mines, producing 400 pound weight every year. And tho' there are so many silver mines now worked in Germany, Tacitus says, that whether the Gods intended it as a blessing or not to the Germans they had no mines in their country.

* Julian, governor of Ceuta, passed into Africa, and engaged Muza to undertake the conquest of Spain. The Khaliph's general afterwards suspecting Julian, cut off his head in 717. Julian is said to have been provoked to this revenge, by Roderick's having violated his daughter; but when Julian desired the king to send him his daughter, he sent her, and had no suspicion of her father's treachery, having just before given him leave to go to his government, on the coast of Barbary. But Roderick and his brother Cossa had, in the year 710, put out the eyes of the Goth Vitiza, and taken possession of his kingdom. Upon which the two Sons of this Vitiza went into Africa with Julian.

Spain

Spain being subdued by the Saracens, the remains of the Goths betook themselves to Asturia, Biscay, and other regions situate near the Pyrenæan mountains, and there, bravely defending themselves against the Saracens, kept possession of the old kingdom under Pelagius their general, who first reigned over the Asturians. In process of time several principalities started up in Spain, and various kingdoms were erected from lands and cities, taken from the Saracens, which were united into one family under the great Sancho, king of Navarre; so that there seemed to be an end of the empire of the Saracens. But after the death of this Sancho, A. C. 1035, the kingdom was divided amongst his four Sons, which division was the source of many wars. For the christian princes turned their arms upon one another, and wars were carried on, with various success, till that part of Spain, which was Christian, became reduced to two principal parts or larger kingdoms, viz. the kingdoms of Castile and Arragon. This division continued till the year 1469, when Ferdinand king of Arragon was joined in marriage to Isabel, princess of Castile; for by these happy nuptials almost all the Christian provinces were united as into one family.

The causes of the decrease of the power of the Saracens in this period were,

1st. Dissentions and intestine wars arose among the Saracens themselves, and there were several principalities, in Spain, in conti-

P

nual

viiith
ixth
xth
cent.

xith cent.

nual opposition one to another. 2d. The Moors were greatly degenerated from their old military virtues, and, neglecting arms, applied themselves entirely to study. Amongst the learned Moors, Averroes is celebrated, who translated the works of Aristotle, at that time every where unknown or neglected, into Arabic, and illustrated them with notes. Cordoba was the principal seat of the Moorish kings, but afterwards, when driven by the Christians to the extreme borders of Spain, it was Granada, which, at that time, was esteemed one of the most famous cities in all Europe. During this state, they built many cities in Spain, which still retain their Arabic names; and the modern Spanish borrows much from that language.

xvth.
cent.

The sovereigns of all Spain were,

1. Ferdinand by whose marriage with Isabel *, the power of Spain was encreased to such a degree, as to provoke the envy of the rest of Europe. The Moors were not yet driven out of Spain; but Ferdinand,

* This queen is said to have made a vow, when her husband went against Granada, not to change her linen, till he had taken that city; hence the colour called after her name Isabel. In the reign of James the first of England the ladies here and in France wore yellow lace, which a writer of that time says was most suitable to the complexions of many of them, on account of their manner of living. But this fashion was disgraced by the execution of Mrs. Turner, who, when hanged for the murder of Sir Thomas Overbury, was dressed in this yellow lace, said to have been her invention.

having

having put his own kingdom first in order, marched against the Moors of Granada in the year 1481, and, having taken most of their cities, reduced the royal city of Granada to such straits, that Boabdiles, the last king of the Sacarens, was forced to surrender. Thus the kingdom of the Moors, which had stood for 700 years, was overlet in Spain. Besides this Ferdinand carried on many others with success, and was esteemed one of the most artful princes of his time *. The Spanish inquisition was set up by this king in the year 1478, against Moors and Jews, who, pretending to embrace the Christian religion, relapsed again to their former impieties †. At the time of the Reformation this was a horrid tribunal to the inhabitants of the whole kingdom. In the reign of Ferdinand, the West Indies were discovered in the year 1494. The islands by Christopher Columbus, the continent by Americus Vesputius, after whom that country was called America ‡.

2. Charles,

* This king is much blamed for his ingratitude to the great Gonzales, who had obtain'd so many signal victories for him, against the Moors in Spain, added the kingdom of Naples to the Spanish dominions, and utterly defeated the French, in three very memorable battles.

† The Inquisition of Sevil, in the space of 40 years, condemned 100,000 persons for apostacy; of these 4000 were burnt, 3000 were reconciled, and the rest fled into Barbary. By these severities 5000 houses, according to Ilescas were deserted.

‡ America had been discovered before, by Martin Behaim a German of good family: he obtained a ship from

AN INTRODUCTION

2. Charles, Grandson to Ferdinand. * by
his

queen Isabel about 1460, for the discovery of land in the western ocean, and having found the island of *Fayal*, it was peopled, and he passed a considerable part of his life there. In 1486 he discovered Brazil and the Straits, called afterwards by the name of Magellan, who, entering the apartment of the king of Portugal, saw a map of those parts, which had been made by Behaim, and undertook to go thither. This Behaim is also said to have been the first who discovered the mariners compass. Columbus did not set out upon his discovery till the year 1492. And Americ Vespuccio was later by five years. The Welch say that it was discovered by one of their princes, who settled there: and several authorities have been produced to prove that America was known to the ancients.

* Charles the Vth within a year after he came amongst the Spaniards, rendered himself more obnoxious to them, than any other prince had ever done, by turning out the old servants of Ferdinand, who was much beloved, and putting into their places Frenchmen and Flemings. He was governed by de Chevers, a French nobleman, who sold the king's sister, a beautiful young lady, to the old king of Portugal, who had married two of her aunts, for 21,000 ducats, and begged the vacant archbishoprick of Toledo, worth 40,000l. sterling, for his nephew, a very young man. By the laws of the Castilians, which the king was sworn to observe, no foreigner was capable of holding any office or benefice, nor should any money be sent out of the kingdom; now several strangers were preferred, and above 1,100,000 ducats had been sent into Flanders in one year. These, and many other public grievances, added to the absence of the king in Germany, occasioned, a revolt of the Commons, who chose Giron and Padilla for their Generals, both of them unfortunate; the first, withdrawing the army from Tordeyllas to Villapanda, gave the king's admiral, who was at hand with 3000 disciplined foot and 700 horse, an opportunity of seizing the former of those places. This error was so resented by the army of the Commons, that Giron was forced

his daughter. This prince, than whom there was none more powerful in Europe, since

xvith
cent.

forced to fly to a remote place, and, after the wars were ended, he was banished into Africa for life. The brave Padilla was taken after his army had meanly surrendered without striking a stroke, and was, the next day, beheaded, with John Bravo and others. Thus ended the wars of the Commons of Castile. Padilla's letter to his lady, just before his execution, deserves to be read.

Don John de Padilla's letter to his lady, on the day of his execution.

SENNORA,

If your pain did not more trouble me, than the losing of my life, I should esteem myself entirely happy; for death being a thing certain to all mortals, the Almighty sheweth him a singular favour, whom he honoureth with such a one as mine: which though lamented by many, is doubtless acceptable in his sight. It would require more time than I have to write several things which might be for your consolation; but as it cannot be allowed, so neither do I desire to defer the reception of that crown which I hope to enjoy. You may, like a discrete woman, bewail your own misfortune, but not my death; for being in so good a cause, it ought not to be lamented by any. My heart, since nothing else is left me, I bequeath to you, desiring you to entertain it, as a thing which most affected you. I do not write to Pedro Lopez my father, because I dare not; for tho' I was his son, in daring to lose my life, I was not heir to his good fortune.—I will not enlarge any farther, because I will not trouble the executioner to wait, nor give way for any one to suspect, that to prolong my life, I enlarge my letter.—My servant Lossa, being an eye-witness of my end, and one to whom I have communicated the secrets of my heart, shall tell you what cannot be expressed herein. So I rest, expecting the instrument of your sorrow and my comfort.

See the history of the wars of the Commons of Castile, by Dr. Geddes.

AN INTRODUCTION

Charles the great, passed the greatest part of his life in travels and in war. For besides Spain, the provinces of the Low Countries, and Burgundy, which he held by hereditary right, he was raised to the imperial dignity in 1519. Hence he became formidable to all Europe. Francis I. king of France, bravely opposed himself to this rising power, but unfortunately; for as he besieged Pavia in Italy, fighting a battle, he was taken and carried captive into Spain, in the year 1522, and obtained his liberty upon hard terms, *viz.* that he should surrender to the conqueror the duchy of Burgundy, and all manner of right to the dominion of Flanders and Artois, and to Milan and Naples, and give his children as hostages. But having regained his freedom, he entered into an alliance with the English, Venetians, Swiss, and Florentines, took up arms again, and at length obtained peace upon more favourable terms in 1529. During this war, Charles perceiving that Pope Clement VII. opposed his designs, marching his army, he took Rome by force, pillaged this city, and besieging the pope in the castle of St. Angelo, forced him to surrender. After this, under pretence of religion, he undertook to oppress the protestant princes, and having routed their army, took the elector of Saxony and the landgrave of Hesse prisoners. But fortune now no longer seemed to smile upon him, for being distressed
by

by Maurice, the new elector of Saxony, he was compelled to grant a truce to the protestants, which was commonly called the holy league; nor was he more fortunate in the war he made with Henry II. king of France. Grown weary therefore of governing, he resigned the imperial dignity, in favour of his brother Ferdinand, and conferred Spain, with the kingdoms and provinces annexed to it, upon his son Philip. At last he ended his days in a monastery, to which he had retired for repose.

3. Philip II. under whom the power of the Spanish monarchy was raised to its greatest height. For Henry king of Portugal dying without issue in the year 1579, Portugal fell to the Spaniards, by means of which Philip became master of both the Indies, from whence, as from a double fountain, flowed the riches of the world; but the revolt, which happened about this time in the Low Countries, served to exhaust this reservoir almost as fast on the one hand, as it was filled on the other, by keeping Philip and his successors continually employed, at a prodigious expence. So that Flanders might be justly called a vast whirlpool, wherein the wealth of both the Indies were ingulphed. Nor was he more fortunate in the war he undertook against the English; for the fleet, which was many years in fitting out, and called invincible, and at that time not to be

AN INTRODUCTION

matched, was partly destroyed by the English and Dutch *, and partly by storms † and tempests. Philip died in the year 1598. He was a prince of a great mind; for when news was brought him of the destruction of his invincible armada, he received it with great composure, saying, "Who bid them fight against winds and waves ‡?"

4. Philip

* The Spanish fleet had not suffered so much from storms and tempests as had been reported. Walsingham wrote to lord admiral Howard to send home four of the largest ships, giving too easy credit to the report. To which the admiral greatly replied, that he would sooner keep them at his own expence, than send them home, till he had more certain advice of the Spanish fleet being disabled.

† Concerning the share the Dutch had in this defeat of the Spaniards, I do not find by any historian, that one ship of theirs was in any of the three famous engagements; nor is a Dutch ship to be found in the fine tapestry, presented by them to the English, and put up in the house of lords. But in the account published in 1588, and afterwards reprinted by Milan in 1746, under the title of the state of England in 1558, it is said, p. 20. "Certain Hollanders and Zealanders offered
" their service according as they are bound, in the end
" of this summer, since the conflict near Calais, to join
" with some of the English navy in the narrow seas, to
" defend the issuing of the duke of Parma, out of the
" ports of Flanders."

‡ Others say it was his obstinacy, and that he was advised not to send his fleet out, in that time of the year, winter season, and long nights. And whilst some say, he thanked God it was no worse, he is charged by others with swearing that he would waste his own crown but he would ruin England and the Queen. He had been married to Mary, sister and predecessor, on the throne,

4. Philip III. who carried on the war as unsuccessfully as ever against the Low Countries. But worn out with continual fatigues, and his finances exhausted, he enter'd into a truce for twelve years with the united provinces in 1609. The next year he drove 900,000 Moors out of Spain; these professed themselves christians, but being descended of the Moors, they were not believed to be sincere in this profession *. Philip III. died in 1621.

5. Philip

to Elizabeth. But he founded his claim to England on his being the next catholic prince, descended from the house of Lancaster. To promote this claim Pope Sixtus publishes a bull absolving Englishmen from their oath of allegiance, and anathematizing all that should respect their oath or their Sovereign. And the queen of Scots had made over her right and title to England, in favour of Philip by will.

* The Barons did all they could to prevent the expulsion of the Moriscoes, but the clergy and the commons were too powerful for them. Money had been levied from the revenues of some great church-men, for promoting the conversion of these Moors, and the clergy had neither patience, nor ability, nor virtue, nor credit, nor generosity, sufficient for the business of conversion, and therefore they soon came to force, and opened against the Moors all the horrors of the inquisition, and of a military power. At first the artful Ximenes tried more gentle means, but he soon lost both his temper and humanity, and treated them as the worst of criminals. After this they were compelled to be baptized, and then, if they deviated from this forced baptism, they were punished, by the inquisition, as apostates, and at last they were expelled. A fatal blow to Spain, which she can never recover so long as superstition, laziness and pride influence her inhabitants

AN INTRODUCTION

5. Philip IV. in the beginning of whose reign the war with the united provinces broke out again, and continued till the year 1648, when peace was made with them at Munster, by which the states of Holland were declared free and independent. This was the rise of the republic of Holland, which, at this day * for wealth and power, is esteemed one of the principal states in Europe. Now the power of the Spaniards began greatly to diminish. Catalonia and Portugal fell off: the former was not recovered under eleven years; the latter could never be reduced, but remains to this day a separate kingdom from Spain, governed by its own kings. War was also unsuccessfully carried on against the French, for by the Pyrenæan treaty, many fair towns in Flanders, together with the county of Roussillon, was left in the possession of the French. Philip IV. died in 1665.

6. Charles II. a weak prince, in whose reign Spain did not meet with a milder fate than under his predecessors: for whilst Charles carried on a lingering war with the Portuguese, he was forced at length in 1669 to

inhabitants. This king Philip, under whose reign, and by whose order, so many cruelties had been executed, is said to have been seized with great horrors at the approach of death, and to have doubted whether the justice of God would permit him to be saved.

* i. e. When Mons. Holberg was writing this part of his book.

declare

declare them to be an independent people, and in his wars with the French he always had the worst, losing some of the richest and best fortified towns in Flanders; but as his life was not employed to the advantage of Spain, his death rendered her the theater of all kinds of miseries. He died in 1700*.

7. Philip V. whose son Ferdinand is the present king of Spain. Charles II. dying without issue, a cruel tempest arose, which, as we have seen in our own times, continued long the vexation of all Europe. For Philip IV. leaving two daughters, the eldest, Maria Theresa, married the king of France, the other to the emperor, and both those princes took up arms, about the right of succession†. After a tedious war, than which no age ever beheld one more sanguinary or cruel, by the treaty of Utrecht in 1713, the differences were composed, on condition that Philip, prince of France, should keep Spain and America. The other regions, which hitherto had been subject to the Spanish dominion, were ceded to the emperor Charles VI. Philip died in 1746.

XVIIIth
cent.

The power of the Spaniards was so great, under Charles V. and Philip II. that it ex-

* And with him ended, in the male line, that branch of the house of Austria. Nor is it unworthy remark, that his corps was the most wretched reliet of humanity that ever disgraced the species.

† Which France had more than once been obliged to renounce in the most explicit and solemn manner.

cited

cited fear or envy in the rest of Europe. But that empire, extending over so many remote kingdoms and provinces, groaned under its own vast weight. There are not therefore wanting who think that Spain is stronger since those provinces have been taken from her, which, for want of inhabitants, could never be maintained in dutiful obedience. And they ascribe the cause of the diminution of the Spanish empire not less to its own excessive greatness, than to the slothful negligence of those who had the supreme power after the death of Philip II. when Spain could scarce supply soldiers sufficient to garrison the castles in the conquered provinces, and was at such immense expence, in hiring foreign troops, that this kingdom was forced to yield up the dominion of the seas, for want of a sufficient fleet. Spain, therefore, reduced at present to its ancient boundaries, greatly supports by sea and land, the glory of her name. As for religion, there is no other country wherein it appears so uniform, and where the Romish orders are so prevalent, which is ascribed to the tribunal of the inquisition, the name of which is terrifying.

OF PORTUGAL.

There are three periods principally to be regarded in the history of Portugal *. The first comprehends the state of that kingdom under its own kings: the second under the dominion of Spain: the third under its own kings of the house of † Braganza.

Portugal with the rest of Spain, fell under the Moorish yoke, when Roderic the last king of the Goths was slain, and long groaned under their tyranny, till a certain prince, of the blood royal of France, named Henry †, came to the assistance of Alphonfus VI. king of Castile and Leon, who was preparing for a war against the Moors A. C. 1088. He was rewarded by Alphonfus, for the bravery he shewed in fighting against the Moors, who gave him a natural daughter of his, Theresa by name, in marriage, and with her all that

xith
cent.

* Said to have been founded by *Ulysses* and called after him *Ulyssipo*, a word compounded of the supposed founder's name and the Greek word *πορος*, which signifies labour.

† Braganza is a city in Portugal, with the title of duchy, having about 50 boroughs depending upon it, situate on the river Sabor, in the mountains near Miranda and the frontiers of Galicia. The dukes of Braganza were of the royal family of Portugal, and had the privilege to sit under a canopy with the kings of Spain. They have possessed the crown ever since the year 1640.

† Henry of Burgundy, grandson of Robert of France. He died at the siege of Astorga in Spain.

part

part of Portugal that was then in the possession of the Christians, on condition, however, that he should hold it in feoff of, and under service to the king. Henry who had only the title of earl of Portugal, died in the year of Christ 1112.

The most famous among their first kings were,

xiith
cent.

1. Alphonfus son of the aforesaid Henry, who, having in 1139, gained a great victory over the Moors, at Ouriques, was saluted with the title of king by the army. He took many towns from the Moors, and amongst others Olyssipo, now called Lisbon; and gave five crown-pieces, or Bezants for the arms of Portugal, in commemoration of the standards of five kings, which he took in his famous battle with the Moors*. He died in 1185. The kings who reigned after Alphonfus, were

2. Saneho I. a prince of much more sense and courage than the second of the name, his grandson, who succeeded Alphonfus II. and was deposed by the people, to make

* Having won the city Evora, one of the principal cities in Portugal, from the Moors, he instituted the order of *avis* (a bird) which was confirmed by pope Innocent IV. The knights of this order had for their crest two birds sable, for their arms a cross fleur de lis, in a field d'or, and wore a black cistercian habit. He shut up his mother in a prison, to prevent her marrying count Tristamare, to whom he gave his sister, which occasioned a war between him and Alphonfus of Castile.

‘ way

‘ way for his brother, Alphonfus III. who
 ‘ with his kingdom was laid under an in-
 ‘ terdict by the popes Alexander and Gregory,
 ‘ which interdiction he despised. He was
 ‘ fuccefsful in his wars, and died in 1279.’

xiiith
cent.

6. Dionyfius.

‘ 7. Alphonfus IV. a brave prince, who
 ‘ waged war, both with the Moors and the
 ‘ Caftilians, and afterwards affifted the latter
 ‘ againft the former, in the famous battle of
 ‘ Tariffa, in Spain, in 1340. He reigned
 ‘ 32 years, and died in 1357, aged 65. He
 ‘ was fucceeded by Peter, a rigorous and juft
 ‘ prince, who died in 1367.’

xivth
cent.

‘ 9. Ferdinand reigned 17 years. In the
 ‘ beginning of his reign he had a war with
 ‘ Henry II. king of Caftile, in which the
 ‘ Portuguefe greatly fuffered: but this was
 ‘ made up by the mediation of the pope.
 ‘ Under John I. the fon of Henry II. of
 ‘ Caftile, it broke out again, but more
 ‘ favourably for Portugal than before. This
 ‘ fecond war was put an end to by the
 ‘ marriage of John with Beatrice, only daugh-
 ‘ ter of Ferdinand. He was fucceeded by
 ‘ his brother John. There were three kings
 ‘ of Portugal of this name; The Firft was
 ‘ called the father of his country, had been
 ‘ grand mafter of the order of avis, and car-
 ‘ ried his arms into Africa with fuccefs. The
 ‘ Second was fevere and great: he quelled a
 ‘ faction at the beginning of his reign, by
 ‘ beheading

' beheading the duke of Braganza, and other
 ' leaders. He was at the taking of Tangier,
 ' and Azilla, and gained great honour by his
 ' behaviour at the battle of Toro. He settled
 ' plantations in Africa and the Indies, and
 ' erected several fortifications in Guinea. He
 ' died in 1495, aged 41. The Third received
 ' an embassy from the king of Æthiopia, and
 ' extended the conquests of the kings of Por-
 ' tugal in the Indies. He died of an apoplexy
 ' in 1557.

10. John I. or the bastard.

xvth cent.
 cent.

' 11. Edward succeeded his father John in
 ' 1433. He was a prince who encouraged
 ' learned men, and wrote upon government,
 ' and justice, and horsemanship; but he was
 ' not successful against the Moors; he reigned
 ' about five years.

' 12. Alphonfus V. was surnamed the
 ' African, for having taken four cities from
 ' the Moors. He was beat at the battle of
 ' Toro. Guinea was discovered by his sub-
 ' jects in his time. He died in 1481, in the
 ' 49th year of his reign.

13. John II.

' 14. Emanuel was called the fortunate
 ' prince, and his reign the golden age; for
 ' then was the kingdom of Congo, and several
 ' places on the coast of Æthiopia, discovered.
 ' Several towns in Africa were then taken,
 ' the Moors expelled Portugal, and the Jews
 ' compelled to be baptized.

xvith
 cent.

15. John III.

' 16.

‘ 16. Sebastian made war against Abdi-
 ‘ melech, and was defeated; and being miss-
 ‘ ing for some time, was reported to have
 ‘ been slain. In the mean time, the Spaniards
 ‘ invaded the kingdom of Portugal. Some
 ‘ years after, a man came to Venice, and
 ‘ declared himself to be Sebastian; and gave
 ‘ such proofs as satisfied the Portuguese, that
 ‘ he was their king, but the Spaniards ex-
 ‘ posed him upon an ass, shaved his head,
 ‘ and sent him to the gallies; and after that
 ‘ to a prison in Spain, where he died. See a
 ‘ dissertation in Osborne’s collection of tracts
 ‘ upon this Sebastian.

‘ 17. Henry was the fifth son of Emanuel,
 ‘ made cardinal of Portugal in 1542, suc-
 ‘ ceeded Sebastian in 1578, and died two
 ‘ years after, without children, when the
 Spaniards seized the kingdom.

Under these kings, Portugal increased sur-
 prizingly in wealth and power, particularly
 under John II. and Emanuel, when the pas-
 sage was opened for a trade to the East
 Indies, and the Portuguese began to engross
 the spice trade to themselves. Before that
 the merchandise of the Indies was carried
 through the Red Sea, and by Ægypt to
 Alexandria, and from thence to Venice*.

* The Venetians attempted, but in vain, to ruin this
 trade of the Portuguese. They even sent ship-carpenters
 to the sultan of Egypt, to build ships for him, that he
 might be able to destroy the Portugal trade in Africa.

Q

But

But John II. sent persons to explore, and they found the coast of Africa, at the Cape of Good Hope. The navigation to the Indies was perfected by his successor Emanuel: for Vasco de Gama first sailed to the coast of Calecut in 1497*, and afterwards the duke † d'Albuquerque being sent greatly extended the dominion of the Portuguese; the cities of Ormus, Malacca, Cochin and Goa were taken. By this means Portugal claimed to itself the most extensive commerce of Africa and Asia, to the great vexation of the sultan of Egypt and the Venetians, through whose possessions the merchandise of the East Indies had used to pass into Europe; and therefore they left no stone unturned, that they might frustrate the success of the Portuguese. In addition to these advantages, Peter Alvaro Caprales discovered Brasil in America; so that Portugal arrived to the summit of its glory under king Emanuel.

King Henry dying without issue in 1578, there were very great contests for the succeſs-

* Which expedition of his is celebrated by Camoens, the only poet of any eminence among the Portuguese, in his *Lusiade*, ranked by mons. Voltaire among the epic poems.

† So called from a small town in Portugal. He was viceroy of the Indies; but being recalled in the year 1515, he broke his heart, and died the same year. The king was concerned for his loss, and made the son be called by the name of his father, Alphonso, and advanced him to the highest dignities. This son wrote his father's life.

tion. The chief of those who contended for it was Philip II. king of Spain, who having sent a powerful army into Portugal, under the command of the duke of Alba, soon took possession of the whole kingdom. The Portuguese suffered many hardships under this dominion, for besides the Spanish yoke, which was grievous to them, all their enemies appeared in arms against them, and particularly those of the Low Countries, who having been forbid to trade with the Portuguese by Philip, began to send their ships to the East Indies; and thus, to the irreparable loss of Portugal, the Indian commerce was transferred to the Dutch, where it still flourishes, to the envy of other nations.

The last kings of Portugal were, John duke of Braganza, proclaimed king by the Portuguese, having shaken off the Spanish yoke in 1640. And as Spain was involved at this time, in a very calamitous war, with the French, Dutch, and Catalonians, then in rebellion, the new king had time enough to settle his affairs*. But all the Portuguese had possessed in India, was so entirely lost that nothing remained to them but Goa. They were therefore compelled to

XVIIIth
cent.

* By the assistance of the French underhand, in violation of the Pyrenean treaty, and by the English openly: to whose, almost incredible, valour he owed every one of his victories.

xviiith
cent.

make peace with the Dutch. John IV. died in 1656.

Alphonfus VI. in whose reign the continual war, that had subsisted between Spain and Portugal, was ended, and peace made in 1668, by which the kings of Spain renounced all right to Portugal. But Alphonfus, having put an end to that war, was deposed on account of his cruelties, A. C. 1668, and the scepter transferred to his brother Peter, who reigned peaceably thirty years, and died in 1706.

xviiith
cent.

John V. under whose government arts began to flourish in that kingdom. "He died in 1750, and was succeeded by his son Joseph, who now reigns."

Portugal, although it may be reckoned amongst the smallest kingdoms in Europe, is yet inferior to few of them in point of riches*: for the vast produce of the commerce, which the Portuguese carry on in the East Indies, Brasil, and other parts of Africa, is remarkably evident from hence, that upon the death of John IV. after a tedious and expensive war with the Spaniards, there were found

* Lisbon had been destroyed by an earthquake in January 1531. The waters were then raised to an extraordinary height and the royal family and the people lived under tents in the fields. See Paulus Jovius. The same calamity happened again on November 1, 1755, but in a more dreadful manner, for the effects of that concussion, which had been fatal to Lisbon, was felt all over the world.

56 millions Portuguese, in the treasury. Such another instance as this is hardly to be found in history. Portugal has no enemies to fear but the Spaniards; and as Spain cannot, on account of the scarcity of corn, maintain more than 25,000 soldiers in garrison on the frontiers of that kingdom, Portugal can raise an army equal to it. There is a sort of equality between them as to land forces. The Portuguese shew as blind an obedience as the Spaniards to the see of Rome. They have not much applied themselves to arts and learning, but the king that now reigns gives great encouragement to both.

OF BRITAIN.

As there is no region that has undergone so many vicissitudes as Britian, so there is no history of any nation that admits of so many periods and epochs: for the sake of brevity then we shall consider Britain under these four periods. 1. What it was before, and under the Romans. 2 Under the Saxons. 3. Under the Normans. And 4. Under those * monarchs, who were kings of all Britain.

* In the Latin it is those monarchs, who had the dominion of both islands; if our author means England and Ireland, Henry VIII. was the first English king who took the title of king of Ireland, in 1541; but it is plain that his fourth period begins with James I. who was king of England and Scotland or of all Britain.

Antiently Britain was divided into many little governments, as, in those times, were also many other parts of the world, and Julius Cæsar, having subdued the greatest part of Gaul, was the first, who went with an army from the continent into Britain. But though he was successful * in several engagements, Britain, after his return to Gaul, remained under its own laws, till the reign of Claudius, who brought the greatest part of the island under subjection to the Romans, in which state it continued for 400 years; and then the Romans left it, being called upon to defend themselves at home. At that time, when the Romans governed Britain, the country was divided into Britannia,

* The Britons had information, from the Germans, that Cæsar intended them a visit, upon which they sent to him, to let him know, that if there was any thing, in their island, that he wanted, they would spare him the trouble of fetching it, by sending it to him; but this would not answer his purpose, who might expect to find much gold in Britain. If he had landed in Cornwall, or if Casivellanus, who opposed him, had been at peace with his neighbours, it is very probable that Cæsar would not have succeeded in this invasion; as it was, he met with more difficulties and less advantage, than he expected; and though, upon his leaving this island, he ordered hostages to be sent after him, the Britons refused to submit to the disgrace. The brave Casivellanus was chief of the Suelloniaci, who had their station, falsely called a Roman station, on Brockley Hill near Burg, or Borcham wood, names taken, as the learned Mr. William Baxter ingeniously conjectures, from a Greek word, that signifies a tower or castle. See Camden's Britannia, by the late bishop of London.

prima,

prima *, secunda, and maxima Cæsariensis, and a wall was built cross the island, to be a defence against the incursions of the Scots and Picts.

Britain, deprived of the roman protection was exposed to incursions from the Scots and Picts, who poured into it. The Britains finding themselves unequal to these enemies, looked abroad for help, and invited into their country the Anglo-Saxons, now called the Holsatians and Jutlanders, who were then famous for their military skill and bravery. But they, having driven back the Scots, captivated with the pleasantness and fertility of the country, made themselves masters of those they came to protect, and established an heptarchy, or rule of seven kingdoms, the

vth cent.

* In Edward Brerewood's declaration of the patriarchal government of the ancient church, it is said, "three metropolitans there were in Britain (as there were then but three provinces) in the time of Constantine the great, and of the Nicene council: one of maxima Cæsariensis, the bishop of York; another of Britannia prima, the bishop of London; the third of Britannia secunda, the bishop of (Isca) Caerluske in Monmouthshire; which, till king Arthur's time, continued there, and was then translated to St. David's, where it remained also in the form of an arch bishoprick (having the bishops of Wales for his suffragans) till king Henry the first his time, by whom it was brought under the obedience of Canterbury. And although Britain was after divided into five provinces, Valentia and Flavia Cæsariensis being added to the former, yet these being erected and taken out of others, after the time of the Nicene council, retained their ancient prerogatives."

first of which was the kingdom of Kent, the second of Suffex, the third of the west Saxons, the fourth of Effex, the fifth of Northumberland, the sixth of Mercia, and the last that of the East-Angles; all of which in process of time made war upon each other, till they all at last came to be under the power of Egbert king of the West-Saxons, who with his descendants were now no longer called kings of Britain, but of England. Such was the state of this country, when the Danes invaded it *, first under Sueno, called forked

 ixth cent.

 xith cent.

* The Danes had been brought into England, by earl Bricarus, in the time of Ethelred I. A. C. 867, and they then conquered Northumberland. Under Ethelred II. there was a general massacre of the Danes A. C. 1002. In 871 Alfred, the best of kings, began his reign, being 22 years old. All that is excellent in the British constitution and government at this day was originally owing to this incomparable prince, who provided for the perpetual security of the lives and properties of Englishmen by ordaining trials by juries, and the universal distribution of justice, after dividing the kingdom into shires and other less divisions, by the establishment of shire-reeves and justices. He was the first founder of the English navy; he built his ships of war upon a better plan than his neighbours, and extended navigation so far as even to attempt the discovery of a north-west passage. He was himself an excellent scholar, and invited over many learned men into his kingdom from abroad. Architecture, and every other useful art and science was encouraged and promoted in his reign. In a word, for arts of war and peace, religion, stratagem, laws, polity, goodness, learning, valour, patience, and every great and amiable quality, the world has rarely if ever seen a prince that could be compared with him. See his life by Sir John Spelman.

beard,

beard, and after that by Canute the great, ^{xith cent.} and the whole kingdom became subject to the Danes. The last of the Danish kings that governed England was Hardy Canute, after whose death, Edward the Confessor, of the ancient race of Saxon kings, came to the crown. Harold succeeded him, who was defeated and slain in battle, by William duke of Normandy, in the ninth month of his reign. Thus, the Crown of England being transferred to the Norman race, there arises a new epoch in the British history.

The most famous kings of the Norman line were,

William the Conqueror *, who passing from Normandy into England, and gaining the victory at Hastings in Suffex, in the year 1066, subdued all England, and imposed severe laws upon the conquered people. Among others were these, that they should not wear arms, and that upon notice given

* It is true this invader has always been so stiled, and as the conqueror of Harold, not improperly; nor, at this time of day, is it very material, whether he was a conqueror of England or not: authors are however divided upon this head, and the best give it as their opinion, that he wore the crown by compact with the people, however he acquired it. And it is certain his two sons, Rufus and Henry, had never worn it at all but by popular election; Robert, the eldest, putting in his claim, and having been set aside, by the prevalence of the English interest against the Norman. See Bacon after Selden, and a brief history of the succession by Mr. Somers; afterwards lord chancellor.

by

by the tolling of a bell, about eight o'clock in the evening, every inhabitant was to put out his fire and light.

William II. surnamed Rufus, to the prejudice of Robert his elder brother, succeeded: Both were absent in France. But the father's death, which was kept a secret from Robert, was immediately made known, by express, to William. Lanfranc, archbishop of Canterbury, who had been his tutor, undertook for him on this occasion, and made such a combination in his favour, that they seized the royal treasure and the important fortress at Dover for his use, before his landing. This made his way to the throne easy: His father's claim by conquest, seemed to authorise his; and he was quietly crowned at Westminster September 27, 1088. But Odo, bishop of Bayeux, another spiritual politician, envious of Lanfranc, espousing the cause of Robert, some seditions ensued, which were, however, suppressed. And tho' the struggle continued longer in France, the issue was favourable to the prince in possession. Against the Scots and Welsh, he was not so fortunate. He was wise and intrepid: no friend to superstition; on the contrary, he opposed with proper spirit the avarice and insolence of Anselm, an Italian born, who succeeded Lanfranc, and who was so true a priest as to prefer his obedience to the Pope to an oath of fidelity to his Sovereign. In

1096 began the famous Crusade under Pope Urban, who was excited to it by Peter the Hermit, a bold enthusiast. Robert was one of the first who engaged in it, and for that purpose he mortgaged the dukedom of Normandy to his brother Rufus for three years, on his advancing him ten thousand marks of silver, which sum was partly raised by melting down the gold and silver ornaments in churches. In his time Westminster-Hall was first built, and London-bridge rebuilt, the former structure having been so slight as to be carried away by the floods. Having reigned 43 years he was killed by an arrow as he was hunting one morning in the new forest. The information given him by a monk some time before in the same forest, and which he rashly slighted, seems to prove, that he fell by design and not by accident. The whipping and hanging William de Aldery, though related to him, as he constantly professed his innocence, was no small reproach to the character of Rufus. After his death his younger brother,

Henry surnamed Beauclerc succeeded, by means of his great popularity, to the crown. In return he granted a charter in favour of the people and recalled Anselm, who at first was of great use to him, but differing with him about investitures great disturbances ensued. The unfortunate Robert,

(to

' to whom absence was always to be fatal,
 ' returning now from his crusade re-asserted
 ' his claim to the throne, and was again in-
 ' duced to accept of a compromise. Not-
 ' withstanding which, as if made to be the
 ' tool of others, the Pope prevailed on him
 ' to take up arms against his brother: war
 ' ensued and Robert was undone. For being
 ' defeated he was committed prisoner to the
 ' castle of Cardiffe; in which wretched state
 ' he continued many years. Henry is said
 ' to have burnt out his eyes and to have
 ' treated him with many indignities, in all
 ' which he was most inexcusable. This king
 ' married Maude, daughter of Margaret, Queen
 ' of Scotland, a woman of surpassing virtues.
 ' He died in the 36th year of his reign
 ' and 68th of his age. The lords had sworn
 ' in two parliaments fidelity and allegiance to
 ' his daughter Maude and her heirs, but after-
 ' wards preferred one who had as little regard
 ' to oaths as they had themselves, though in
 ' other respects a good prince.
 ' Stephen, third son of Stephen Earl of Blois,
 ' and Adela daughter to William I. as his
 ' elder brother Theobald had done, laid claim to
 ' the crown, and the Scots supported the pre-
 ' tensions of the empress Maude. Nor was
 ' this the only source of his troubles: for his
 ' clergy set up a separate interest against him,
 ' disowning their subjection to him and threat-
 ' ening

‘ ening to make their appeal against him to a
‘ higher court, the court of Rome. His life
‘ was spent in war. He exacted no subsidies
‘ from his people, nor exercised any cruelties
‘ against the nobles notwithstanding their con-
‘ tinual defection and rebellions. He died
‘ without issue in the 50th year of his age
‘ after a reign of 18 years.’

‘ Henry II. and first of the line of Plan-
‘ tagenet, succeeded by adoption and agree-
‘ ment. In his reign the kingdom was divided
‘ into six parts, and three itinerant justices, an
‘ officer much older than this reign, appointed
‘ to each of them, to punish such as should
‘ be found guilty of murder and other crimes
‘ by the verdict of twelve men. The cri-
‘ minal was imprisoned, or banished, or con-
‘ demned to lose a leg, but was not put to
‘ death. In this reign the pretensions of the
‘ clergy were carried to an insufferable height,
‘ by Thomas Becket, a most turbulent man,
‘ made archbishop of Canterbury by the King,
‘ and the broils they occasioned, brought on
‘ the murder of the bishop, the excommunica-
‘ tion of the king, and numberless other
‘ mischiefs. In 1170 Henry associated his son
‘ Henry with him in the crown rather than
‘ government; for though he was crowned
‘ king he was never permitted to act as king.
‘ This gave rise to great disturbances; for the
‘ French King prevailed upon the son to make
‘ war upon his father, which he did again and
‘ again,

AN INTRODUCTION

' again, till a fever, said to have been occa-
 ' sioned by excessive grief, carried him off.
 ' The story of Rosamond called the fair, a
 ' daughter of lord Clifford, is interwoven with
 ' the history of this reign, with circumstances
 ' of a nature peculiarly romantic: as that
 ' being infinitely beloved by the king and per-
 ' secuted by Eleanor his queen, she was
 ' artfully concealed by her royal paramour in
 ' a labyrinth at Woodstock, which no body
 ' had the clue to but himself: notwithstanding
 ' which, jealousy, and revenge were too inge-
 ' nious for love, and a visit from the wife
 ' was fatal to the mistress. Henry died in
 ' the 35th year of his reign and 57th of his
 ' age, and was succeeded by his son

' Richard I. surnamed Cœur de Lyon, who
 ' wasted all the treasures his father left, and
 ' as much more as he could get by the sale of
 ' crown-lands and by extortion, in what was
 ' then called the *Holy War*, and now the *War*
 ' *of Fools*. Having in this enterprize grossly
 ' affronted the duke of Austria, he was, on his
 ' return home in disguise through the do-
 ' minions of that prince, discovered and taken
 ' prisoner, and an immense sum of money
 ' demanded and raised for his ransom. After
 ' which England was again exhausted in
 ' order to carry on a ruinous war against the
 ' king of France. Having reigned 9 years
 ' and almost 8 months, he died in the 45th
 ' year of his age in April 1199, of a wound
 ' in

in his arm by an arrow, shot by Bertram de Gourdon, from a castle in Normandy. The king himself not only pardoned Bertram but ordered a sum of money to be given him: but after the king's death, he was fled alive and hanged.

John succeeded to the exclusion of prince Arthur, then 13 years of age and son to Geoffery elder brother to Earl John. Again the kingdom was shook with civil commotion, in which the unfortunate young Prince being taken prisoner was basely murdered; most probably by his uncle's own hand. His death, however, contributed as little to the repose as to the credit of the king. He lost all his possessions in France, and was so reduced as to make a solemn resignation of his crown to the pope, though he then had excommunicated both him and his kingdom by the hands of his legate; who for some days kept it in his custody, and who did not restore it but in the ignominious terms of holding it as a tributary. What a blot in the annals of England? And what a price to pay for the aid of the church against his own subjects, who had combined, even with France itself, against him! In his time were granted or rather confirmed the two famous charters, called *magna charta* and the charter of forests, the great foundation of the liberties of the people of England. He past a law at Hastings

com-

 xiiith
cent.

‘ commanding all ships to strike to the English
 ‘ flag, under pain of forfeiture of ship and
 ‘ goods and imprisonment of the crew as
 ‘ guilty of treason.’

‘ Henry III. eldest son of King John, suc-
 ‘ ceeded his father, and being but 10 years
 ‘ old, was put under the care of William
 ‘ Earl of Pembroke. At the age of 19 he
 ‘ took the government upon himself. He
 ‘ extorted great sums by revoking grants
 ‘ made in his minority, and lost much trea-
 ‘ sure and many lives in a fruitless attempt
 ‘ to regain the possessions of his ancestors in
 ‘ France. On his return he removed the
 ‘ chief counsellors and preferred only strangers,
 ‘ for which and other violences the lords of
 ‘ parliament threatened to expel him and
 ‘ to elect another king. This made him
 ‘ comply with all their demands, and consent
 ‘ that the chief justice and treasurer should be
 ‘ chosen by the people, and twenty-four con-
 ‘ versators of the kingdom appointed, twelve
 ‘ to be chosen by the lords and twelve by the
 ‘ commons. But the lords not agreeing
 ‘ amongst themselves, the king obtained a
 ‘ victory over them, though none of them
 ‘ were put to death upon a scaffold except
 ‘ Marius of Ireland, who was drawn, hanged
 ‘ and quartered for piracy, and he is said to
 ‘ have been the first punished in that way.
 ‘ Henry died in the 65th year of his age,
 ‘ having reigned 56 years and 20 days. In
 ‘ his

‘ his time and in one year, the pope sent
 ‘ over 300 Italian priests into England, and
 ‘ received out of the kingdom more money
 ‘ than the annual revenues of the crown at
 ‘ that time amounted to.’

Edward I. who was esteemed one of the
 most valiant and prudent kings of his time,
 conquered Scotland. ‘ He reigned 34 years
 ‘ and 7 months.’

‘ Edward II. was a very weak prince, with
 ‘ very strong passions: his attachment to his
 ‘ favourites Gavestone and Spencer threw the
 ‘ kingdom into violent disorders. His queen
 ‘ and his son were of the party against him;
 ‘ and yet she afterwards suffered Mortimer,
 ‘ her own favourite, to have as great an
 ‘ ascendancy over her. He reigned 18 years,
 ‘ then meanly resigned his crown, and was
 ‘ afterwards murdered in the 43d year of
 ‘ his age. In his reign the Scots gained a
 ‘ complete victory over the greatest army ever
 ‘ sent into their country.’

 xivth
 cent.

Edward III. who contested with Philip de
 Valois his right to the kingdom of France.
 He therefore made an expedition into that
 country, and, in two several engagements,
 entirely destroyed the French army, though
 greatly superior in numbers to his own: the
 first was the battle of Cressy, the other of
 * Poitiers. Having taken king John in the
 last

* In this second decisive action, Edward the black
 R prince

xivth
cent.

last battle, he carried him into England. When therefore a peace was ratified at the town of Bretigni, the French were obliged to surrender up several provinces and rich fortified cities to the English. But sometime after they take courage again, and recover almost all the country of Aquitain. Edward dies in the year 1377.

Richard II. came to the crown a minor, and raised great expectations by the magnanimity he manifested in the midst of the sedition raised by Tyler and Straw; the former of whom was killed in the audacious fact of seizing the reigns of his horse by Walworth lord-mayor, and alderman Philpot: but whether the compliments he deserved on this great occasion set him out of the reach of advice for the time to come, or it was only a flash of accidental heroism, the rest of his life was in no respect answerable to this specimen: evil counsellors got possession of him; by their advice he was prevailed upon to sacrifice his best and ablest friends, the duke of Gloucester and the earl of Arundel, to sell Calais and other strong places to the French, and at last to endeavour at rendering himself absolute. Upon which occasion faction

the prince had the sole command, his father not being in France at that time, and has been more justly celebrated for his moderation after his victory, than for his conduct and valour in acquiring it.

did

‘ did what virtue should have done: he was
 ‘ over-powered, subdued, and at last accused
 ‘ in full parliament: a formal resignation in
 ‘ favour of his uncle’s son, Henry duke of
 ‘ Lancaster, was the issue. Notwithstanding
 ‘ which he was murdered with a poll-ax in
 ‘ Pontefract-castle in the 34th year of his age,
 ‘ having reigned 22 years.

‘ In his reign Wickliff began the great
 ‘ work of reformation.’

‘ Henry IV. surnamed Bolinbrooke, hav-
 ‘ ing given authority to conspiracies by the
 ‘ success of his own, had full employment
 ‘ at first, in subduing the spirit he had raised;
 ‘ but that being done by the deaths of his
 ‘ principal opposers, he had time to manifest
 ‘ himself as a king as well as an avenger, by
 ‘ repulsing and chastising both the Welsh and
 ‘ the Scots, though assisted by the French,
 ‘ who had taken advantage of the troubles to
 ‘ infest the kingdom. Meditating, at length,
 ‘ a simple expedition against the Turks he
 ‘ happily died before he could execute it, in
 ‘ the 46th year of his age, having reigned
 ‘ 13 years and almost 6 months.’

Henry V. the great hero of his age. He, ^{xvth cent,}
 thinking to make good the old claim to the
 kingdom of France by force of arms, passed
 over thither with an army: Where, after
 taking Harfleur by assault, he routs the French
 army that came against him, though six times
 greater than his own, at Agincourt, a town

xvth cent. in Picardy *. Thence extending far and wide his victorious arms through France, and taking many more towns, he, at last, by marrying Catherine daughter of Charles the sixth, king of France, acquired the administration of affairs in that kingdom during the life of his father-in-law, who was not in his senses, and thereby the strongest assurances of succeeding to the kingdom, after his death, as his heir and successor. But Henry dies in the flower of his age, A. C. 1422, leaving behind him an infant, eight months old, who was afterwards declared king of France and England; but degenerating from his father's virtue, he soon lost, by sloth and cowardice, all that the other had acquired in France. The times following these were full of disturbances, on account of the unhappy and fatal contentions, that reigned between the families of York and Lancaster, the first of which wore a white, the other a red rose, as badges of their party. These calamities lasted till the reign of Henry the seventh, who was of the house of Lancaster, but married the daughter of Edward the fourth, of the house of York, and, by virtue of this marriage, put an end to the daily

* It is very remarkable, that in this battle, the English soldiers were troubled with a severe looseness, and it is more than probable, that their glorious defeat of the French, under this circumstance, gave rise to a certain proverb of good luck.

dissen-

diffentions between the different factions of xvth cent.
the white and red rose.

Edward IV. first of the line of York, and called by Phil. de Comines, the handsomest prince of his time. Before this king was crowned, he marched against king Henry and defeated him in a battle, in which 36776 persons were slain. His subsequent wars with the brave earl of Warwick, whom he had deceived, continued long and were very bloody. He recovered Berwick from the Scots and proclaimed war against France, but died before he could put his design in execution, after having reigned 22 years and one month, aged 41. Our legends are as full of this princes amour with Jane Shore, a citizens wife, as of Henry the second's with fair Rosamond.

Edward V. succeeded to the kingdom in name, but not in fact. For

Richard III. is said to have put to death all that opposed his usurpation of the crown, and by means of the duke of Buckingham, whom he afterwards beheaded, to have accomplished his design. He is also said to have murdered king Henry with his own hands, and accusing the duke of Clarence of treason to have caused him to be drowned in a butt of malmsey in the tower; his dutchess also, being big with child, was, they say, poisoned a little time before. His nephew Edward V. with his

xvth cent. * younger brother, were both murdered, it is said, by his contrivance, in the tower; but the appearance of Perkin Warbeck in the next reign, who pretended to be Edward's brother, seems to prove that the murder of the two brothers was not an incontestable fact. Richard is also accused of having put his own wife to death that he might be married to his niece sister, to his two royal nephews, not without the consent of her mother, whom he had before accused of adultery; and the croud of historians (with an exception to one Sir George Buck) severally set their seals to this infernal process. But then it is certain no prince ever held the reigns of power with more wisdom, or maintained his hold with more bravery: though betrayed and deserted at Bosworth, he defended himself against Henry of Richmond like a lion in the toil; and considering who was his successor, and how little regard was shewn to his dead body, 'tis hardly to be wondered, that such a load has been laid on his memory.'

* Henry VII. who, having quieted all internal commotions, reigned with so much art

* As he attained the crown by the success of his arms, and a confederacy of interests in his favour, rather than by any lineal title, so, in the course of his story it appears, that his wisdom was all of a selfish kind; being so thorough a politician, that his own interest was the only idol he adored, and to which he sacrificed whatever stood in his way:

art, as to be called the Solomon of his age. He was charged with being too covetous. He departed in the year 1510.

Henry VIII. who, of all the kings of England, is the most remarkable for his virtues and his vices, perpetually falling from one extreme to another, and agitated by contrary passions, it became doubtful and uncertain to his subjects, how they were to behave, what to believe, and what to reject. One while he writes against Luther, in support of the Roman Pontif, and obtains the title of Defender of the faith *, which is continued to his posterity; by and by he revolts from the Roman church, and commands his subjects to acknowledge himself as head of

xvith
cent.

way: thus when the queen-mother, by whose means, and under whose countenance, he was first invited out of Bretagne, grew uneasy to him, he confined her in a monastery, and seized on all her effects. Stanley earl of Darby, who had set the crown on his head, he caused to be executed as a traitor, on the evidence of Sir Thomas Clifford, who had been sent by the said earl and others, to enquire into the birth of Perkin Warbeck; and he also put to death the young earl of Warwick, the last of the Plantagenets, to make way for the marriage of his son with the Princess of Spain, the king her father having declared, that the succession was not secure to Henry's family, while that nobleman lived: and lastly, to diminish the power of the nobility, and to replenish his own affairs with the spoils of his people, were the great objects of his reign.

* This title had been given to one of the kings of England long before, and one of the kings of France had also been distinguished by the title of Defender of the Church.

xvith
cant.

the church of England. He built up a * new system of religion, to which he obliged his nobles and bishops to subscribe. But nothing shews the strange disposition of this king more than his marriages. As soon as he had dismissed Catharine of Arragon, he takes Anna Bullen, whom he soon after condemned to the block. After Anne he married the lady Jane Seymor, who died in child-bed. Anne of Cleve, he never consummated with †. His fifth wife Catherine Howard, being accused of adultery, he had her head cut off. The sixth, Catherine Parr, survived him. Henry VIII. died 1547.

Edward VI. a prince of excellent disposition, by whom the reformation of religion was publicly brought in; but dying in the flower of his youth, things soon put on another appearance.

Mary, having restored the Roman religion, raged with cruelty against the protestants, putting them to fire and sword. She married Philip II. king of Spain, but there was no

* As a gospel religion it is here, very improperly, called new, and so much the more so, as the doctrine promulgated in England by Wickliffe, in the reign of Richard the second, had been more or less cultivated here ever since. It is true he shook off the papal yoke, but then he was himself a persecutor of both papists and protestants.

† Because of some disgust he had conceived to her person; and a marriage without consummation he took to be void in itself.

fruit of that marriage, Mary being of an advanced age. She died 1558.

xvith
cent.

Elizabeth whose name is * sacred to Englishmen, for prudence, clemency and other egregious virtues, by the constant exercise of which she procured the love and veneration of her subjects. She restored the purer rites of religion, that had been instituted by Edward VI. and abolished by Mary; so that the real commencement of the Reformation, established by law, must be traced from the time of Elizabeth. Under this queen the power of Spain began to be lessened. For she destroyed the invincible armada of Philip. She encouraged the Netherlanders in Flanders, who had taken arms, against the Spaniards, and supported the needy Dutch with supplies of men and money. And last of all, under this queen were laid the foundations of a maritime power, and of various kinds of commerce and of navigation, which flourish to this very day.

* And revered all over Europe, having as high a spirit as her father, and as much penetration and sagacity as her grandfather, not without some mixture of alloy from both. But tho' she loved power as much as either, she loved it as much for her people's sake as her own: and of this her people were so fully convinced, that they suffered her to make what use of her prerogative she pleased: a circumstance which, perhaps, helped to mislead her successors; who, mistaking complaisance for a tacit acknowledgement of right, arrogated to themselves, and for their own ends, what she had claimed and exercised only for the good of the public.

The

The state of religion and policy in this period was as follows.

During a great part of it, no people were ever so grievously oppressed, by the popes of Rome, as the English. For in the time of king John, things were come to such a pass, that England was not only tributary, but even under vassalage to the Roman Pontif. However, there were not wanting men, who bravely undertook the rescue of the rights of the church and kingdom, and at last happily effected it. For as Henry VIII. first shook off the yoke of popery, queen Elizabeth completed that system, which has been the establishment ever since. As to the form of political administration, the first kings of the Norman line governed very absolutely, but in length of time, the regal power was much weakened. To this period the * Parliament owes its origin, whose authority is at this time

* The name certainly, but whether the thing, has long been matter of controversy. That the Democratic or popular, was a prevalent ingredient in the mixed government of our Saxon ancestors, I think may be very clearly proved; and difference in form will make little difference in fact. The Norman invasion did certainly ruffle the course of things for a considerable time, and it was, besides, the interest of a new government, to wear out, as much as possible, the land-marks of the old; which the ignorance, as well as the turbulence, of the times, made so much the more easy: If therefore, the uncertain titles of those princes, who succeeded to William the first, their broils with the clergy, and the very great power of the nobility, induced

time so great in public affairs. Henry I. is thought to have been the first who convened the commons, whereas, before his time, the assembly consisted only of the bishops and the nobles. Hence therefore the rise of the division of Parliament, into upper and lower houses.

The Kings of Great Britain were

James I. king of the Scots, who, when queen Elizabeth died without children, as he was of the royal lineage of England, was declared * king. From that time, England, Scotland

xviii
cent.

induced them to convene the commons, as well as the bishops and barons, by way of additional weight to the royal scale, in the great national council, it may be fairly inferred, that their being so convened was rather a renovation of an old practice, than a mere novelty, unknown till then, and superinduced on the constitution in being by the authority of the king only; or at least, that the Saxons and Normans, being at last incorporated, and having been accustomed to the same manner of government, under different names, found their common account in returning to it again; and that the court-language being Norman, the micklemote of the Saxons was only christened a new by the Norman appellation of Parlement. Compare *bibliothica politica*, dialogue fifth, by Tyrrell, with Hume's history.

* He was descended from the eldest daughter of Henry VII. Notwithstanding which, the parliament having given power to Henry VIII. to settle the succession by will, and the Scottish branch of the royal family, not having been comprehended in that settlement, a parliamentary recognition of his right seemed to be necessary; but this was a point which queen Elizabeth, whether out of pique or pride, would never bear to be touched; and from that neglect, it was owing purely to the management of his friend

xviiith
cent.

Scotland and Ireland, have been subject to the same kings. Under king James were sown the seeds of those dissensions, which proved fatal to his successor Charles. For as he attempted to lessen the power of Parliament, and was not thought to wish too well to the protestant cause, he alienated the minds of his subjects from their love and allegiance to his family. This king passed his whole life in peace and idleness, being inactive * to a fault; but in the mean time, Britain was disturbed with perpetual † commotions on the score of religion. For in the year 1605, certain wicked papists hire a cellar under the parliament-house in Westminster, where the national assemblies are held, and put some barrels of gun-powder there, that setting fire to it, they might put an end to both king and parliament. This, which the divine providence prevented, is called the powder plot. James I. died 1625.

Charles I. pursuing his father's measures, proved a very strenuous promoter of regal

friend Secretary Cecil, and the general good will of the nation, that he so peaceably ascended the throne.

* A part of his character, which, however, he has been abundantly more reproached for, than he deserved.

† This is not altogether true, for tho' many controversies, both on civil and religious topics, were the growth of this reign, they produced no national disorder; and as to the powder-plot, produced as an instance, it was a single act of wickedness, in which a few desperate enthusiasts were concerned.

authority.

authority. And as he believed the presbyterians would strongly oppose his attempts, not being less enemies to monarchy, than to the hierarchy, he was always much incensed against them. For twelve years Charles reigned without calling a parliament, in which time he did what he pleased, promulgating laws, and imposing taxes, on his subjects; which the kings of England ought not to do, without the consent of parliament. At length, his resources being exhausted, and the Scots rebelling, he is forced to summons the parliament; which, when assembled, could not, either by threats or intreaties, be prevailed upon to grant any aid to the king, till the * past administration should be accounted for, and wicked ministers be punished. In the end this dispute between the king and the parliament broke out into an open war, which lasted long and with various success, but at last proved fatal to him: for his forces having been finally routed at † York, he fled for

* Before the national grievances were redressed. Tho' the king's ministers are answerable to parliament for their conduct, the king is not: and as the king can act no otherwise than by his ministers, it is, on the other hand, to be understood, that, in this sense only, he can do no wrong.

† The last general battle was at Naseby, but he is again defeated at Buxton-heath, going to raise the siege of Chester, after which he threw himself into Oxford; which place being invested by Fairfax, and the royal party every where in ruins, he ordered all his garrisons to submit, and then

xviiith
cent.

for refuge to the Scot's army, who, as it were by bargain, delivered him up to the parliament for * 400, 000 l. In the mean time there started up a new sect of independents, which had lain long hid under the denomination of presbyterians or puritans. These men having got the power into their own hands, shut up all the avenues to accommodation and peace: the chief of this party was Cromwell, a most subtle man, who, by art and contrivances, filled up the vacancies in the parliament, and the army, with men of his own stamp; and being thus made master of civil, as well as military, affairs, he erected a tribunal, before which the unhappy king being called to defend himself, is condemned, and loses his head, in the year 1649.

Cromwell. After the king's death, the supreme power was in Cromwell, commander of the army, who, when he had subdued Scotland and Ireland, and forced prince Charles, claiming his father's kingdom, to fly from Britain, receives the title of protector of England, Scotland and Ireland. The three kingdoms paid a blind obedience to him, whilst he lived, and so formidable was he abroad, that the greatest kings sent embassa-

then repaired to the Scot's army, having been invited thither by M. Montrevil, the French agent, with full assurance, that his person should be safe, &c.

* Being part of the arrears of their pay.

dors to him, and solicited his friendship. The Jews also, moved to it by the greatness of his character, are reported to have sent legates to London, to know whether he was not the Messiah: but, after his death, as he had, by artifice and amazing powers of mind, preserved the Britons in dutiful subjection to him, and his son Richard was not found * equal to such a burden, the † nobles consult about recalling prince Charles from exile.

Charles II. who having, after his father's unnatural death, wandered in exile in France, Germany, and Holland, is at last called home to his kingdom in the year 1660. There was then a great change in affairs, and as it is the genius of the English nation to fall from one extreme to the other, in shifting the form of their government, they were very near throwing themselves under a state of absolute and

* Richard deserves abundantly more consideration, than has yet been paid him: he did not think power worth the price it was to cost, and abdicated with a better grace, than his father usurped.

† The nobility had little or no share, at first, in his revocation: General Monk was, no doubt, the chief instrument of that great and sudden change, and, in doing it, he shewed as little regard to oaths and vows, as ever Oliver had done before him. The people in general also, sick of mutations and believing the shortest way to a settlement, was to recall the king, inclined the same way. And as it was the parliament which abolished the regal authority, so it was a parliament which re-established it. The king, in two declarations, bespeaking a return of their affections; and they, by formal deputation, inviting him to take possession of the throne of his ancestors.

arbitrary

AN INTRODUCTION

arbitrary dominion, when they came out of anarchy and licentiousness. But, in length of time, when they mistrusted the religion of their king, and his brother James had publicly professed himself a papist, and the king had entered into engagements, with the French, without * advising with his parliament, and he had exhausted his treasury by unsuccessful wars with the Dutch; the love for the royal family by degrees so much abated, that if the English were in tears, when the king died in 1685, it was more to lament the succession, than the funeral.

James II. was amazingly bigotted to the Romish superstition, but when he attempted secretly to undermine the foundations of the protestant religion established in England, and at last openly put his hand to the business; the English, studious to preserve their religion and liberty, invite over into England William prince of Orange, married to Mary, daughter of the same king James; who, being frightened at this procedure, banished himself into France, in 1688.

* That he might have done by his prerogative royal, without any violence to the constitution: but he did worse, he formed a plan to govern without parliament, and, in order thereto, not only broke his faith with the public, by shutting up the exchequer, but committed numberless other overt-acts, which shewed plainly enough, that he designed to govern, as well as conquer, *a-la mode de France.*

William

TO UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

257

William and Mary. William prudently put an * end to domestic disturbances, and having entered into a league with most of the princes in Europe, carried on a war against France. He died in 1702.

XVIIIth.
cent.

Anne succeeded William. She was sister to queen Mary, and second daughter of king James, married to George, hereditary prince of Denmark and Norway. She successfully prosecuted the second war, commenced against the French, and during her reign the kingdom was pretty free from internal commotions: but when, without informing the confederate princes, she made peace with the French, and shewed herself † at length more inclined

* Prudently endeavoured it, our author should have said; for certainly he never was able to effect it: for though both parties joined in the revolution, they would never join afterwards. The church and the Tories he left to the queen; the Whigs and the state, he took to himself: but as one would endure no equal, the other would endure no superior! Instead of obliging both, he obliged neither. He was unfortunate in the field, having been generally foiled; but then as Monsieur Voltaire acknowledges, though always beat, he was always to be feared, and often drew more advantages from a defeat, than the French from a victory.

† She had been bred a Tory: during the whole reign of king William, she had been entirely neglected by the Whigs in compliment to that Prince, who could not prevail on himself to treat her with out-side civility. Her first administration had been composed of Tories. The Lords Marlborough and Godolphin were both veteran Tories, and it was only for making occasional concessions to the Whigs that they fell into disgrace with that party;

S

when,

AN INTRODUCTION

inclined to that party called the Tories, which is thought to be not so consistent with the present state of the government; another storm seemed again to threaten England with fresh disturbances. But at this time, the queen died, in the year 1714.

George I. elector of Hanover, descended from Elisabeth, daughter of James the First, king of England. He ascended the throne, by virtue of the great act of settlement, passed after the death of the duke of Gloucester, in the year 1700. He is reckoned one of the most prudent kings of Britain. He died in 1727.

George II*.

The present state of Britain,

As to its form of government, it is principally to be observed, that the regal power is circumscribed by the laws, so that no law can pass, nor tax be levied, but by consent of parliament. This assembly is divided into an upper and lower house; the first men in the kingdom, the lords and bishops, are members of the one, in the other are the representatives of counties, and cities or corporations.

when, and not till when, they became converts to Whiggism. It was but natural, therefore, when she found herself uneasy under the violent domination of her haughty favourite, the Duchess of Marlborough, she should have recourse to her old friends, to rescue her out of such hands. And it is scarce to be doubted that a change, which was the subject of so much clamor, was the effect of private resentment.

* A just and merciful prince, and a true friend to liberty.

Each

Each house of parliament takes into consideration affairs relating to the commonwealth, but no determination is of any force till both houses concur, and it has received the royal sanction. No country has been more productive of dissensions than Britain. But the last convulsions, with which it was torn, are not so much to be ascribed to the innate disposition of the people, as to a multitude of sects and parties, and the unseasonable attempts of the Stuart family; for, if you except queen Mary, consort to William III. there have been * no princes of that race, who could ever make themselves agreeable to the English nation. Trade and mechanics are what the † English are

* It would be an injustice to the memory of Q. Anne not to rectify this mistake: for notwithstanding the violent party feuds which embittered her repose, and deformed her reign, she was as personally dear to her servants, as the interested manners of a court would permit a sovereign to be: and she never made her appearance in public, but she was received with as loud and general acclamations as had ever been bestowed even on Queen Elizabeth herself. Nor ought the cruel aspersions cast upon her towards the latter end of her reign to be urged in abatement of this account; as they were in general derived from the most odious sources; and when truth and time shall take a review of that perplexed Period, more cause will be found to lament her situation than blame her conduct.

† The English are not over-much obliged to our author for contracting to such narrow bounds the sphere of their abilities: but as M. de Voltaire, in composing an express panegyric on the great idol of the French, Lewis XIV. could not help doing as much honour to England,

AN INTRODUCTION

are most ingenious in, and fit for: and hence it is, they are at this day esteemed the richest people in the world. It is to no purpose to say any thing of their sects or parties, since they are innumerable. For no part of the christian world has fallen into more different or more absurd opinions in religion, than England*. I will only mention two of their political sects or parties, the *Whigs* and the *Tories*, each of which are divided into several other parties. The † *Tories* are for extent of regal prerogative, the other perpetually opposes it; but in each of these, there are

as to him, we have so much the less reason to regret, what is here insinuated to our disadvantage. So long as the names of Bacon, Newton, Lock, &c. are known in the world, the English have no reason to fear any reproaches of this kind, especially from a Dane.

* This is one of the natural effects of liberty, though many of these absurd opinions came for shelter into this country from abroad, as at present the *Herrnhuters* or *Moravians*.

† It is with the *Whigs* and *Tories* on these points, as it is with all other sects of men under the agitation of hope and fear, ambition and interest: they tighten or relax their Principles as suits best with their convenience. When the *Tories* have had the exercise of the powers of the prerogative, they have been eager to extend those powers; when the edge has been turned against them, they have been as eager in the defence of popular liberty: and in like manner the *Whigs* who withstood the storm, have melted in the sunshine, so that in point of court complaisance the administrations of the one have differed very little from the administrations of the other. At present both these parties seem to be worn out; and if the names remain, they are oftener made use of to amuse the public, than to serve it.

some

some that are more moderate, and some more rigid than others. The more rigid Tories endeavour to introduce an absolute power; the more moderate men of that party strenuously defend the royal prerogative, but set bounds to it. The more rigid Whigs, if it were in their power, would entirely abolish the prerogative of kings *; but the more moderate of that party, who differ not much in principle from the moderate Tories, labour to preserve the balance equal, between the crown and the parliament. And whatever may be the bias of parties, it will be safest for princes to follow those maxims, which best support the strength and dignity of a kingdom.

OF FRANCE.

There are three remarkable Epochs in the French history: The first comprehends the most ancient state of the kingdom: the second takes its beginning from Julius Cæsar, and continues till the irruption of the Franks: the third contains the history of the French kings.

The old Gauls were esteemed as one of the bravest people in the world; for it is recorded by historians, that having over-run Greece, and

* Our author has no right to assert, that all the rigid Whigs would abolish all prerogatives of the crown, or that they are properly *Republicans* who would only limit the power of kings to the *Salus Populi*.

a great part of Asia, they settled in that place which from them was called Galatia and Gallogræcia. They often also invaded Italy, and set fire to Rome itself. Hence the Romans trembled at the very name of the Gauls; and though by law the priests were exempt from military service, they were obliged to bear arms in the Gallic wars. Gallia was divided into several common-wealths at the time when Julius Cæsar made his expedition into Gaul *. Hence it was not difficult for so great a man, the force of whose arms no nation could withstand, to subdue a people weakened by continual discord and intestine wars †.

—
vth cent. Gallia remained near 500 years under the government of the Romans, from the time of Julius Cæsar to Honorius, in whose reign it fell into the hands of Barbarians. Among those barbarous nations which overwhelmed Gaul, the Franks ‡ were the chief, who imposed

* Gaul was anciently divided into a number of states, some under kings, some under nobles, the rest popular: and as to their kings they were chosen and deposed by the people, and bound to the observance of laws. But none of these states were absolute in themselves, or independent on the rest; for at a certain time of the year a general council of the whole nation was held, in which matters relating to all in general were determined. Cæsar often speaks of a general council of all Gallia being called.

† It was not however, till after a contest of several hundred years, that the Gauls were forced to submit to the Romans.

‡ The Franks were a brave people, who, under the latter

posed their name upon the conquered country, ^{vth cent.} and called it France, which is the name it is known by in our times.

Gaul continued under French kings above thirteen hundred years from the first king Pharamond to the present time. That large tract of time is divided into several æras, which make as many distinct classes of kings.

The first æra of the French kingdom begins from Pharamond, and extends to Charles the Great, *i. e.* from the year 424 to the year 761. Pharamond * was the first king

latter state of the Roman empire, shaking off the yoke of tyranny, were distinguished from other Germans by being called Franks or Freemen. They delivered Gallia from the Roman yoke A. C. 485, when Clovis defeated Siagrius.

• He is said to have been the author of the Salic law, by which women are excluded from any right of succession to the crown of France. But there is nothing in that law concerning government. It was made for the use of the Salii, certain Franks so called, from their situation on the banks of the river Sala, beyond the Rhine. The law was, that no woman should ever inherit Salic land, which was all to descend in the male line. The people chose their kings, and for wickedness and incapacity often deposed them; of which there are eight instances out of the first twenty-seven kings. They often chose the son to succeed the father, and if there were more than one, sometimes divided the kingdom into equal shares among them. But in fact, the women were never chosen by the people; for when Childeric died and left two daughters behind him, his brother Lotharius succeeded to the kingdom; the three daughters of Cheribert were set aside for their uncle Sigebert to succeed; and the brother, not the daughter of Gontrannus, king of Burgundy and Orleans, succeeded him.

of the Franks, but neither under him nor his successor Clodion did the Franks settle in Gaul, so that the beginning of the French kingdom in Gaul should be given rather to Meroveus, from whose name the kings of that family are called Merovingian. Clovis was the most renowned of the Merovingian kings, who subdued almost all Gaul, and professed the christian religion. Childeric III. was the last of them, whom Pepin, Father of Charles the Great, deprived of his kingdom, and drove into a monastery.

viiith
cent.

Soon after Clovis the kings began to degenerate from the ancient virtue of the Franks, so that the whole power of the kingdom was in the captains of the king's guard, who were commonly called *Maires du Palais*. For Pepin, Charles Martel, and the younger Pepin, taking to themselves the whole charge of government, were the masters of these weak kings. At last Pepin the younger shut up Childeric in a monastery*. And thus the Merovingian race lost the crown of France, in the year 751.

The second æra containing the Carolingian kings, so named from Charles the Great, begins with Charles the son of Pepin, and

* Pepin did not take the crown till he had called a parliament, the members of which unanimously consented to it, and then he sent an embassy to the pope, who being in want of Pepin's assistance, declared in his favour.

ends with Lewis the slothful, that is, a period from the year 761 to the year 987.

Of these Carolovingian kings the most famous were,

Charles the Great *, who having conquered Desiderius, the last king of the Lombards, took possession of the kingdom of Lombardy, in Italy. He carried on a war against the Saxons for the space of thirty-two years. Having subdued them, and converted them to the christian faith, he brought all Germany under his dominion. He likewise took a great part of Spain from the Saracens. And at last, being at Rome, was proclaimed emperor by the Roman people in the year 800. He died in 814, after having raised the kingdom of France to its greatest height.

viii
cent.

ixth cent.

Lewis the Pious was the prince under whom the affairs of France began to decline. Despised for his softness, he is thrown into prison by his own children; but is afterwards restored to his kingdom and dies in the year 840.

* He was a great friend to the papacy, and it was at pope Adrian's request that he marched against the Lombards, who had undertaken to humble the pontiff. At the request of the same Adrian, he went a third or fourth time into Italy. He is said to have been a good-natured man, but this is not consistent with the total destruction of the army of the Lombards, and his beheading 4000 Saxons. He was so much feared even in the east, that the king of Persia sent him presents, and gave him a title to Jerusalem and the Holy Land, calling himself his lieutenant.

After

After his death, the kingdom was divided amongst his three sons, and the French dominion began to be disturbed with great commotions, till at last the imperial dignity was transferred from France to Germany. The last of the lineage of the Carolovingian race was Lewis the Slothful, who dying in prison, a new race succeeded to the empire called Capetian from Hugh Capet.

xth cent.

Kings of the Capet family were,
Hugh Capet, from whom this race of kings began.

Robert *.

xith cent.

Henry I. †.

Philip I. in whose reign began the military expeditions to the Holy Land.

xith cent.

Lewis VI. the Gros ‡.

Lewis VII. ||.

Philip

* A very good man with a very turbulent wife, who disturbed his reign, and the kingdom after his death, in favour of her younger son Robert, by endeavouring to deprive her elder son Henry of the succession, but she did not prevail.

† Aided by the duke of Normandy defeated the queen his mother's army, and obliged his brother to rest quietly with the dukedom of Burgundy.

‡ He was just and valiant, and though a great friend to the pope and church, was excommunicated by two of his own clergy, the bishops of Paris and of Sens. But this sentence was annulled by pope Honorius XI. He reigned twenty-nine years.

|| Son of Lewis the Gros. He married Eleanor, daughter of the earl of Guienne and Poitou, and in her right held those earldoms for a time, but surrendered them

up

Philip Augustus, who with Richard, king of England, undertook an expedition to the Holy Land; but animosities arising between them, Philip returned and possessed himself of several provinces in France that belonged to the English, adding them to his own dominions. He also gained a signal victory over the emperor Otho IV. at Bovines.

XIIth
cent.

Lewis the Eighth *.

Lewis the Saint, who made an unfortunate expedition into the Holy Land and was canonized.

Philip the Bold †.

Philip the Fair ‡, who, with the consent of

up to her when he divorced her on his return from the holy wars, as they were called: upon this Henry II. married her, and by such acquisition became very powerful in France.

* Surnamed the Lion. A prince of great bravery. The English dissatisfied with king John, invite him over, and crown him king on May 20, 1216. But being beat in the battle at Lincoln, he was forced to return to France again the next year.

† In his time Peter, king of Arragon, was so cruel, and inflamed the inhabitants of Sicily so outrageously against the French, that in the year 1282, on Easter-day, about the time of Vespers, they rose and massacred them. Hence the proverb of *Sicilian Vespers*.

‡ In the battle of Mons, in Puelle, fought between the French and Flemmings in his time, it is said, 25,000 of the latter were slain on the spot. Notwithstanding all that has been said against the Knights Templars, it is very probable their greatest fault was that of being too rich: for as to the crimes they were charged with, they most solemnly denied them with their last breath.

the

the pope, abolished the order of the knights templars.

xivth
cent.

Lewis the Tenth*.

Philip the Long†.

Charles the Fourth, after whose death France was the seat of most rueful calamities. When Philip de Valois, the grandson of a brother of Philip the Fair, and Edward the Third, king of England, grandson of a daughter of the said Philip, contended with each other for the kingdom; the first supported his claim by the Salic law, by which the weaker sex was excluded from the succession; the other maintained, that he was nearer to the crown by alliance. But during this contest, the nobility of France proclaim Philip their king. In Charles the Fourth, A. C. 1328, this royal race of Capet was extinct, and the kings that succeeded them were of the family of Valois.

Kings of the Valesian family were,

Philip de Valois, between whom and Edward the Third a heavy war broke out on occasion of the differences just mentioned. During this war, the king of England, in an engagement near the town of Cressy, routed a very numerous army of Frenchmen with only a few soldiers. In this battle were slain

* He reigned only eighteen months.

† Succeeded by virtue of the Salic law, against the pretensions made in favour of Jane, daughter of Lewis X. but she was satisfied with the kingdom of Navarre.

thirty-thousand men; and after this Edward besieged Calais and took it*. The loss of this battle was in some measure repaired by the duke of Dauphiny; for at his death, he bequeathed the duchy to Philip, on condition that the eldest son of the kings of France should take the name of the dauphin. Philip dies in 1350. This king laying a heavy duty upon salt, his rival king Edward said, he was the author of the *Salic* law.

xivth
cent.

John was more unfortunate in his attempts against the English than his father: for in the battle of Poitiers he was taken and carried into England, and compelled to ransom himself on the hardest conditions, and not without giving up some of his richest provinces†. This unfortunate king died in the year 1364.

Charles

* Edward was not only exasperated by losing the crown of France, which he claimed by right of inheritance, as son of Isabel daughter of Philip, but more so on his rival's calling upon him to appear and do homage for his possessions in France. These contests occasioned the famous battle of Cressy, in which, besides the thirty-thousand soldiers mentioned by our author, the kings of Bohemia and Majorca, the duke of Alanzon, the brother to the king of France, the duke of Lorraine, the earl of Flanders, in all eleven princes, eighty barons, twelve hundred knights were slain. Calais remained in the possession of the English 210 years. Queen Mary lost Calais; her sister, queen Elizabeth, tried in vain to recover it: Cromwell got Dunkirk, and Charles II. sold it to the French again.

† The prince of Wales to prevent a battle, offered to make good any damages that might have arisen from his march from Bourdeaux, and to be on parole not to bear arms

xivth
cent.

Charles V. or the Wise. He seeing by the example of his father and grandfather, that the English were not to be subdued in the open field, endeavoured to defeat them rather by stratagem than force, and in this he was fortunate and successful; for he drove the English out of France, leaving little more in their possession than Calais*.

Charles the Sixth. In his reign France was torn to pieces in so miserable a manner, that scarce were appearances ever so bad under any other king†. He was at certain times deprived of his senses. The nobility of France contended with one another for the administration of the kingdom. The most warlike king Henry the Fifth took this opportunity to invade France, and having subdued more

xvth cent.

arms in France for seven years. The moderation and politeness, and even submission of the prince to his royal captive was most remarkable. When the duke of Anjou, who had been left as a hostage, made his escape, king John returned to England to justify himself, as not concerned in his flight, and also to prevail on Edward to join in an expedition to the Holy Land.

* It should be observed, that this great success of the French did not happen till after the much lamented death of Edward the Black Prince.

† In this king's reign, about the year 1412, appeared a set of Enthusiasts in Picardy, the chief of whom pretended to be the Saviour, and asserted that Jesus was to be seen in him, as the father in the son. They held bodily pleasures not only lawful but holy, as being tastes of the future joys of paradise. They were called *Hommes d'intelligence*, not unlike the modern Herrnhuters, or ancient Gnostics.

than

than half the kingdom, forced Charles to ^{xvth cent.} accept of a peace on such hard conditions, that to the exclusion of the Dauphin, the guardianship of the realm, and a prospect of succession should be transferred to the English. Charles the Sixth dies in the year 1422.

Charles the Seventh, who in the beginning of his reign was reduced to such straits and difficulties, that having lost most of his cities, he was ludicrously called the king of Bourges, the town where he chiefly resided. But at a time when there seemed to be no hopes of recovering his father's kingdom, a certain country girl unexpectedly presented * herself to the king, signifying, that she came by divine appointment, to raise the siege of Orleans, and crown him king. Nor did she fail in making true her promises; but to the amazement of all accomplished them both. The English were astonished at this, as at a miracle, and trembled at the very name of this girl. But she having been long a scourge to the English, was taken, accused of witchcraft, and burned. After the death of this girl, called the maid of Orleans, Charles oppressed the English and slew numbers of them, who were then under a panic, distressed by various accidents, their king an infant, and at last he drove them out of France. Charles the Seventh died in the year 1461.

* See a dissertation upon this girl in Rapin's history of England.

xvth cent.

Lewis the Eleventh, an artful Prince of great genius. Disturbed in the beginning of his reign † by the factions of princes conspiring with one another, he defeated their attempts by deliberation and prudence. For by a ready compliance with all their demands, he gained over every one of them separately to his own interest. The chief of these adverse parties, was Charles the son of Philip duke of Burgundy. Between him and the king was perpetual enmity: But Lewis secured himself against the power of the duke of Burgundy by art and cunning. He gave yearly stipends to the ministers of the king of England, that they might keep their master from invading France, and that he might be sure of the continuance of their service, he took care to have a receipt given him for the payment of the stipend. This king was the first who paved the way for absolute power unrestrained by laws: to which purpose, despising the nobility, he made use of the lowest people in matters of the greatest moment. In other respects he was superstitious, and even ridi-

† He himself had more than once taken up arms in his father's life-time, and when he came to the crown behaved more like a conqueror than a legal successor. The faction that conspired against him called themselves by the name of the league for the public good. He had just before his father's death retired to the duke of Burgundy, and left him and his party to take possession of the throne. To this king the French owe the establishment of their posts.

culously

culously afraid of dying. Hence it happened ^{xvth cent.} that as often as it came into the physician's* head to threaten him with death, he put money into his pocket to pacify him. He died 1483.

Charles VIII. who, pretending to the kingdom of Naples, made an expedition into Italy, and soon overwhelmed it like a torrent, astonishing the natives with the unusual arms borne by the Switzers, with one stroke of which they could cleave a man asunder: before this there had been only mock wars, and battles without blood-shed in Italy. They therefore called the French and Swiss unfair enemies for having committed such slaughter, contrary to the law of arms as practised in Italy. But several princes conspiring against Charles, he lost the kingdom of Naples with as little trouble as it had cost him to get it. Charles died in the year 1498.

Lewis XII. who made an expedition against the dukedom of Milan as Charles the Eighth had against the kingdom of Naples, and met with the same fate as his predecessor. Naples indeed was taken and lost again almost at the same time, but Lewis kept possession of the duchy of Milan a little longer. The greatest princes in Europe, who saw with envy the progress the French had made in Italy, conspired against him and

* His physician is said to have got 55000 crowns from him in five months.

T

drove

 xvth
cent.

AN INTRODUCTION

drove him out. The most inveterate enemy he had was pope Julius the Second *, a great soldier, always marching abroad in arms. What sort of a vicar Christ had in this man is evident from this circumstance, hearing that the French had gained the victory in the battle of Gierra d'Adda, he threw away the book he held in his hand being angry with God for his partiality to the French. Lewis died in the year 1515. For moderation and justice stiled the father of his country †.

Francis I. the nearest relation Lewis had. In the beginning of his reign he marched an hostile army into Italy, but was opposed by the Swiss, who to that day invincible, were then overthrown, with the loss of ten thousand soldiers. Then he took Milan, but soon after Francis lost it again, so that Italy in that age was a grave to the French. Francis and Charles the Fifth were perpetually at war with one another, and though Francis had the worst of it, yet, by opposing himself against these attempts of the emperor, he prevented him from swallowing up all Europe. Francis

* He took the name of Julius, as being a soldier and an admirer of the character of Julius Cæsar.

† He was one of those few princes who have lessened taxes, which had been increased by Lewis XI. to forty-seven millions of Livres. He was not only good to his people in general, but merciful even to his enemies; and when pressed to revenge himself on those who had used him ill before he came to the crown, he said, it did not become the king of France to revenge the quarrels of the duke of Orleans.

died

died in the year 1547. Polite literature is much indebted to this prince, whose liberality brought together men skilled in every art and science, and established public schools at Paris *.

Henry II. who having entered into a league with the protestant princes of Germany against the emperor, Charles the Fifth, marched with a powerful army into Germany and took Metz, Toul and Verdun. The emperor to recover these cities besieged Metz with a 100,000 armed men; but Francis duke of Guise bravely defending that place, the emperor in despair of recovering it, withdrew. But the arms of Henry were not so successful against the Spaniards, for his army being routed at the church of St. Quintin, he was obliged to make Peace with Philip the Second. Not long after the peace Henry, tilting on horseback at some Sports, received a wound in his head, which proved mortal, and he died.

Francis II. Under him civil wars broke out with great vehemence: France was for a long time grievously distressed and torn by them. The nobility strove to have

* He was a great encourager of all arts and sciences. Old Leonardo da Vinci, a famous Italian painter, is said to have died in his arms. Notwithstanding his public edifices, and expensive wars, he not only died without debts, but left a considerable sum behind him, with advice to his successor to relieve the people from some of their taxes.

xvith
cent.

the rule in their Hands, and Catharine of Medicis, Mother of the king, cunningly fomented these diffentions, that she alone might govern under a weak king; and as the reformed religion then began to spread itself throughout all France, parties made religion the pretence for Tumults. In this troubled state of things Francis II. died in the year 1560 *.

Charles IX. brother of Francis. Catharine his mother undertook to be his guardian. In the beginning of his reign there was a conference held at Poissi between the Romish and the reformed divines, when they disputed very warmly upon the principal articles of religion. Five civil wars were the consequences of this conference. And when the Romanists considered that the Hugonots † (for so they called those of the reformed religion) could not be suppressed by open force, they had recourse to fraud, and murdered the chiefs of the Hugonots who came to Paris, being invited to assist at the celebration of the marriage of Henry of Bourbon, king of Navarre, with Margaret the sister of Charles.

* In the seventeenth year of his age. He was married, when fifteen, to Mary queen of Scots.

† So called from Hugos the name of a gate in the city of Tours, where the Hugonots are said to have held their first meetings. Others think they were so named from the ghost of king Hugo, said to have appeared often by night in that town; and they held their assembly in the night.

The

TO UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

277

xvth.
cent.

The rest of the cities followed the example of the Parisians, so that thirty thousand men are said to have been put to death at that time. This massacre * began at Paris on St. Bartholomew's day in the year 1572, and therefore called St. Bartholomew's butchery, or the Paris wedding. But for all this seeming zeal for religion, such were the vices, the luxury, indecency and depravity of the court, that the courtiers turned even sacred rites into farce and entertainment, for they made dances to the psalms of David; and the king himself is said to have danced merrily to the 129th Psalm. Charles departed this life 1574.

Henry III. brother of Charles, and king of Poland, hearing of his brother's death, secretly and instantly flies from Poland, and hastens into France, where the same year he had the good fortune to obtain the crown, which he held for fifteen years. He was not less disturbed by domestic commotions than his brothers. Under the influence of his pleasures he surrendered up the care of the kingdom entirely to Catharine his mother. Hence started up a new faction called the holy league, which, being supported by the strength and influence of Spain, began to be so troublesome to the king, that he was forced to make his peace with Henry of Bourbon, and follow

See the memoirs of the duke de Sully.

T 3

the

AN INTRODUCTION

the standard of the Hugonots *. When those who took part with the Guises and the league were besieged in Paris, he is stabbed with a knife by a dominican monk † in the camp and dies in 1598. In him the family of Valois was extinct.

Kings of the Bourbon family were,

Henry VI. king of Navarre ‡, who, tho' he had a right to the crown by inheritance, was long opposed by the Guises faction on account of the reformed religion, which he had hitherto strenuously supported. Hence

* France was divided into three factions, that under the king was the weakest; the league under the duke of Guise for the papists, and that for the protestants under the king of Navarre. Hence these disturbances were called the war of the three Henries.

† James Clement, whilst the king was reading some letters at St. Cloud. Guise head of the popish faction, had contrived several schemes for the taking off the king, all of which were defeated; and when at last he would have forced the king into a monastery, he and his brother, the cardinal, were by the king's direction, put to death in the same chamber in which the duke had contrived the massacre of Paris.

‡ Henry IV. owed almost as much to the services of his minister, the duke de Sully, as to his own vast merit. These two great men seemed to have been born for one another; and nothing but greatness and glory could be the consequence of their united endeavours: Of the two the king seems to have been the greatest character, and to have often manifested a superiority of wisdom, by submitting to the other when most inflexible; but I have no occasion to say any thing further of this minister or his master, since the memoirs of the former are or ought to be in the hands of every reader.

recourse

recourse is had to arms, and intestine wars are again renewed, in which the king reduces his enemies to such straights, that they are forced to look abroad for foreign aid. At last, the king, foreseeing that there would be no end to these evils, unless he renounced the persuasion of the Hugonots, came over to the more prevailing religious opinions. The holy league was extinct by this renunciation, and a peace ensued. From this time the power of the French began to increase, and grew to such a height that it became the envy of all Europe. He provided for the security of the reformed religion by ratifying the edict of Nantz, and at last attempted a glorious work indeed, if you regard the intention of the best of kings, but very difficult to accomplish: His design was to form all the Christian world into one great commonwealth. But whilst he was busy in this scheme he is killed by the vile hand of a most abandoned wretch * in the year 1610.

 xvith
cent.

Lewis XIII. a youth, nine years old, succeeded his father. He by the ministry of cardinal Richlieu introduced absolute government into France, and at the same time amazingly increased its power. The pride of

* Ravaliac. A student had attempted to kill him before, but striking his knife only into the king's mouth, his majesty said, "I see the Jesuits are to be condemned by my mouth." If the parliament would have consented the king would have pardoned this young assassin.

xviiith
cent.

Spain was then humbled, and the strength of the Hugonots impaired, by taking the strongest fortresses that had been given them for their security. Lewis the Thirteenth died in the year 1643.

xviiith
cent.

Lewis XIV. surnamed Le Grand, whose actions are too well known to require a recital here. He died in the year 1715, after a reign of seventy-two years, and after having carried on wars with all Europe, and made his name famous every where *.

Lewis

* The reign of this prince is too long and too full of extraordinary matter to admit of a specification of particulars, within the narrow bounds of such a work as this: For which reason I shall refer the reader to the age of Lewis the XIVth by M. Voltaire. Only the curiosity of the public having been much agitated by M. de Voltaire's account of the prisoner of state so carefully concealed by the extraordinary expedient of being obliged always to wear an iron masque, and some farther lights on that subject having been communicated to me, I have here subjoined them; in a persuasion they will not be unacceptable to my readers.

That there was then such a prisoner, and so circumstanced, was acknowledged in the Bastile to M. l'Abbe, L. de F. who was confined there in the years 1718, 1719. But M. de Voltaire's account is not altogether precise: For it seems he was first sent to the isles d'Hieres or de St. Marguerite, of which M. de St. Marc was then governor. And when this gentleman was afterwards made governor of the Bastile, he had orders to bring his prisoner along with him under a charge not to take off his masque on pain of death. When brought to the Bastile, he was lodged in the same apartment which had been formerly assigned to marshal Biron: He was served always in plate; and the governor in person laid his cloth, waited on him

at

Lewis XV. now reigns,

at table, and removed all into the next room, where the servants waited, as often, as one particular domestic, called James, was out of the way; and when he dyed, he was not buryed at St. Paul's, as M. de Voltaire affirms, but at the Celestines, where the princes of the house of Orleans are bury'd.

As to the great question, who he was? it seems a diversity of opinions prevailed: Some believing he was the duke of Beaufort, an illegitimate grandson of Henry IV. who disappeared at the siege of Candie, and who had been a vigorous opposer of Lewis the XIVth in his minority; and others, that he was the count de Vermandois, a natural son of that prince, by Madam la Valiere, who they say, was arrested secretly, and carried from the army in Flanders in the year 1689, to the isles above-mentioned, for having given a blow to the dauphin: But M. de Chanlis, a lieutenant-general in the French armies, has been often heard to say, that the count de Vermandois died in his arms; and the epitaph of that prince has been read in the cathedral church of Arras: Then as to Mr. Beaufort, how can any person imagine, who recollects with how little ceremony his father was sent a prisoner to Vincennes in the reign of Lewis the XIIIth, and even the great prince of Conde to the Bastile, together with the Prince of Conti and the Duke de Longueville, in that of Lewis XIV. that he would have been treated either with so much respect or so much mystery?

And as to a third opinion, That he was the stolen fruit of the amour said to be carried on between Anne of Austria, mother of Lewis XIVth and cardinal Mazarin, I shall submit it to the candor of my readers, which no doubt will call for better authorities, than suspicious circumstances, or even the libels of the times, which made very free both with the mother and the son, as appears by the following verses:

“ Si'l est fils aîné de l' Eglise
 “ Le cardinal est son parent.

Con-

AN INTRODUCTION

Concerning the political and ecclesiastical state of things under these monarchs it is to be observed,

Tho' France anciently consisted of as many provinces as at present, yet most of the dukes and counts were rather tenants in fee than vassals. For whenever any province was granted to a prince of the blood or any other great man on account of his merit, the donation was real and not personal; it descended to his posterity, so that but a small part of France was immediately in the possession of the kings. But now dukedoms and earldoms are no more than the estates of the nobility distinguished by the king with some illustrious title. Formerly the regal power was very much restrained by the laws. Lewis the XIth was the first who opened the door for absolute dominion, by making use of the lowest men in the highest employments. For he sometimes made ambassadors of barbers. And under the later kings by the ministry of the cardinals Richlieu and Mazarin the nobility are so far reduced that they dare not so much as mutter against their monarchs. Once the reformed religion was spread so wide in France, that the balance was equal between the Hugonots and Romanists. But under Lewis the XIIIth the power of the former was greatly diminished. At last, under Lewis the XIVth, by the revocation of the edict of Nantz, it is so entirely

entirely extirpated, that the Roman is the only religion now dominant in France. Such is the present power of France, on account of the numbers of provinces and inhabitants, the immense revenue of the kings, and skill in military matters, that as often as she shall raise her arm, it is necessary for the greatest part of Europe to join their forces against her. As for arts and learning Paris at this day deserves to be called the seat of the muses.

OF DENMARK.

The Danish history may be divided into five periods, of which the 1st. contains the heathen kings. The 2d. christian kings till the junction of the three northern crowns. The third begins with that junction, and reaches to the dissolution of it. The 4th. from the dissolving the junction, and soon after the reformation of religion in Denmark to an alteration of government under Frederic the III^d. And the 5th. from Frederic the III^d. to our own times.

Concerning the space of time included in the first period such disputes have arisen that the historians have formed three different parties, and hence have arisen three different Hypotheses, the vulgar, the Gothlandish and Islandish Hypothesis.

The author of the vulgar Hypothesis was Saxo Grammaticus, who makes Danus to have

have been the founder of the kingdom, and the abettors of this Hypothesis assert he reigned in Denmark before the building of Rome.

The author of the Gothlandish Hypothesis was Nicholas Petreius, who makes the kingdom of the Danes of much greater antiquity, bringing forth her kings out of the ark of Noah. This Hypothesis pretends to be supported by some Gothlandish monuments, but at present it is laughed at by every body as an idle story.

The Islandish Hypothesis, is confirmed by Islandish monuments, and transforms many Saxon kings into poetical and imaginary heroes. The first king according to the Islandish Hypothesis, was Skioldus, who is supposed to have reigned a little before the Christian Æra. This Hypothesis, as the safest and most probable, and agreeing best with the concurring annals of other countries, is embraced by most modern historians. But how much this Hypothesis wants to be reformed is evident from our Danish history lately published.

The most remarkable of the Heathen kings were,

Skiold son of Othin first king of Denmark, after whom the succeeding kings were called Skioltungs.

Frotho the pacific, the most valiant as well as the greatest legislator of all the Pagan kings.

Gormo

Gormo Grandævus, in whose reign the christian religion was made known to some of the Danes, but this story is lost in idle tales.

Gotric, who waged war with Charles the great.

Harald Blaatand, under whom most of the Danes are converted to the christian faith. xth cent.

Sweyn II. or Sueno forked beard, a severe persecutor of the christians, who subdued great part of England. The ladies redeemed him with their jewels and necklaces when he was taken prisoner by the *Julinenses* *. In return for this liberality the king enacted that the women should share half the inheritance with their husbands. xth cent.

Under these kings, the Danes were the greatest pirates in the world †, they made a merit of it, neglecting agriculture. When they were distressed for want of corn they sent forth colonies, and poured themselves out like a deluge into almost every part of Europe, under the names of Cimbri, Goths, Lombards,

* The inhabitants of *Julinum* towards the mouth of the Oder in Pomerania.

† For more than 250 years they infested the coast of England, almost without intermission, destroying towns, ravaging the country, and demanding exorbitant sums of money, till Alfred the great built some ships of war, and defeated them. Many settled in England, and in time they acquir'd the possession of at least one half of the kingdom. They were not less mischievous on the French coast than on the coast of England : At this time they lived entirely by rapine and plunder.

Angles

Angles and Normans. They had no written laws, but disputes were terminated by combat, and the use of red hot iron. The residence of the king was at Leire, in the isle of Zealand, and therefore the old kings of Denmark were called kings of Leire. Liberal arts were unknown in this period; the Runic characters were then in use, which some believe to be the most ancient, others take the Gothic characters, invented by Ulphilas, bishop of the Goths, in the year 370, to be of greater antiquity. The principal Gods of the Danes were Othinus, Thir, Thor, and Freia from whom the days of the week received their appellations.

The second period begins with Canute the Great and reaches down to the times of queen Margaret, that is, from the year 1014 to the year 1387, and comprehends 373 years.

The more celebrated kings in this second period were,

Æthent. Canute the Great king of Denmark, Norway, and of England. For he subdued England by his sword *, and Norway by art and

* This is not true : for to prevent a battle, Ironside and Canute agreed, after Canute had refused to decide his fate by single combat with Ironside, to divide the kingdom between them. But after the death of Ironside, he took possession of the whole, not by his sword, but by getting the peers and bishops of the land to swear allegiance to him. He was succeeded by Harold, and after him by Hardi-Canute, and then the Saxon line was restored again in the person of Edward called the Confessor, the only surviving son of Ethelred.

money :

money: but the possession of England was ^{xth cent.} not lasting to the Danes. He indeed with his sons Harold and Hardi Canute reigned in England, but with the last ended the government of the Danes in that country.

Magnus surnamed the Good, king of Norway, conquered Denmark, and slew so many of the *Venedi* or Wenden *, who made an irruption into Denmark, that it became a proverb, to say, Thou hast not yet passed Kropper's Heath. *Du bist noch nicht Kropper Heide vorbey*. He was the author of the *Norwegian law* called, *Graa Gaasen. i. e.* Grey Geese.

Sueno Estritius, whose uncommon learning and polished manners have been praised by Adam † of Bremen. In succession to him reigned six sons one after another, of whom the most famous were Canute and Eric.

Canute, whose liberality to the clergy was so great, that to enrich them he imposed the payment of tithes on the whole kingdom. The Jutlanders were so provoked at this imposition that they rebel, and slay him at Odensee, as he was flying into Funen. Under this king the bishops being called to some of the first employ-

* The *Venedi* or Wenden were a Slavonic nation, and many of them remain still in Lusatia and in the ulterior Pomerania, part of which is now called the duchy of Wenden. See Hubner's Geograph. Vol. III. p. 854 German edition.

† This Adam was one of the canons of the church of Bremen about the year 1070. He wrote an ecclesiastical history, in which he gives an account of the propagation of christianity in Denmark.

ments in the kingdom, the pride of the clergy swelled to a great height. Canute therefore is enrolled among the saints. St. Canute's church yet remains at Odenfee.

Eric the Good, under whom the church of Denmark was set free from the jurisdiction of the prelates of Bremen, to whom it had hitherto been subject, and obtained an archbishop of its own. Julin, the principal town in Slavia*, being taken, Eric sets out for Jerusalem, and dies in the island of Cyprus.

xiith
cent.

Waldemar I. called the Great. After the death of Eric, Denmark was vexed with continual intestine wars until the time of this Waldemar, who put an end to those troubles, and restored the Kingdom to a most flourishing condition. Assisted by archbishop Absalon, he subdued the Rugians and Venedi, demolished Julin, and laid the foundations of the city of Dantzick. Waldemar was as great a law-giver as a soldier; for he made the laws of Zealand and Schonen. He died in 1181. In his reign Absalon, bishop of Roschild, began to build Copenhagen, which is now the

* By *Slavia*, or *Sclavia*, the author means the north-east part of Germany, which was then possessed by the *Venedi*, or Wenden, a Slavonic nation. In the map in Puffendorf's Hist. of Charles Gustavus, in the island Wollin, at the mouth of the Oder, is a place called *Julina Submersa*, formerly flourishing, but, according to Hubner, in his larger geography, destroyed by Waldemar the First, agreeably to what our author says.

metropolis

metropolis of the whole kingdom. In his time also the Danish nobility began to emerge and form a distinct class from the common people.

xixth
cent.

Canute VI. subdued the greatest part of lower Saxony, with the cities of Ham-
burgh and Lubec, by his brother Waldemar, and after a signal victory at sea humbled the Venedi so as to make their princes acknowledge, that what they had they held of the king. His sister Ingeburgis, divorced by Philip Augustus, king of France, raised such disturbances that all France was excommunicated. Under this king flourished these illustrious men, archbishop Absalon, the glory and ornament of that age; Saxo-grammaticus, who wrote the Danish history; Sueno Aggonis, Abbot Wilhelmus, and others.

Waldemar II. surnamed Victorious, who besides Denmark kept possession of Estonia, Livonia, Courland, Prussia, Pomerania, Meklenbourg, Holstein, Stormar, Ditmarsh, with part of the Marquisate of Brandenburg. But being taken by a stratagem by Henry Count of Sweren, he is kept in a filthy dungeon for three years; during which time most of the conquered cities revolted. And when the king, having obtained his discharge from prison on very hard terms, attempted to recover them, he is beat at Bornholm, and compelled to make peace. Waldemar the Second was the founder of the Jutland law,

xxiith
cent.

U

which

xiiith
cent.

which is still in use with the people of Sleswick. He abolished the ordeal trial, or use of the burning iron, and ordered that criminals should be condemned or acquitted by the evidence of witnesses. He is therefore esteemed the greatest law-giver of the Danes. He died in 1242.

Eric, son of Waldemar, commonly called PLOGPENNING, for having laid a tax upon ploughs! After many lasting disputes with his brother, which often broke out into war, he is cruelly beheaded by his brother Abel, in the year 1250.

Abel the Fratricide, waging war unsuccessfully with the Friezelanders, is slain in the year 1252.

Christopher I. the third brother. He having thrown James Erlandi, archbishop of Lunden, into prison for pride and contumacy, is excommunicated by the other bishops, in virtue of a constitution lately made with the church of Dacia, of which frequent mention is made in the Danish history. At last, the king, in receiving the sacrament, has poison given him by a certain bishop, and dies.

Eric VII. Glipping, who was slain by some of the principal men of the kingdom in 1286. He was called *Glipping* from winking with his eyes every now and then.

Eric VIII. Mendvedius, so called, because whenever he affirmed or denied a thing he

used

used to add the Danish particle *Mend*. He is reckoned amongst the wisest and the best kings of Denmark. He had a sharp dispute with John Grand, archbishop of Lunden, whom he kept long in prison. This brought down upon him thunder from the Vatican, and he was forced to appease the pontif's wrath by an humble submission. He is said to have made some collections out of the archives of the kingdom towards a Danish history, which were called *congesta mendvedii*. He died in 1319.

Christopher II. who, being hated by the nobility, is driven out of the kingdom, but such calamities ensued upon his banishment, that the provinces of the kingdom were bought and sold like merchandize by the nobility and the counts of Holstein. This unhappy king died in 1353. After his death followed an interregnum of seven years, till the nobles, grown weary of the yoke of the Holsteiners, recalled Waldemar the son of Christopher, who had been brought up in the Imperial court.

Waldemar III. who repaired the ruinous state of Denmark, driving out the Holsteiners by force, or pacifying them by money. He wrested Schonen by art from Magnus Smeck, king of the Swedes, but sold Estonia to the German troops for 18000 marks of pure silver, the greatest part of which he spent in a journey he made into Palestine.

U 2

Under

 xivth
cent.

xivth
cent.

Under this most prudent king were laid the foundations of the subsequent union of the three kingdoms, by the marriage of his daughter Margaret to King Haquin, heir to Norway and Sweden. He carried on very burdensome wars with the Hans Towns, and died in 1375.

Olaus, king of Norway, born of Margaret and Haquin. He died in the flower of his youth, in 1387, and with him ended the second period.

The state of Denmark in this second period was such, that, as Denmark never submitted to the Romans, nor was ever subject to the Franks, so the emperors of Germany who came after could claim no right nor title to this kingdom. However, some emperors, among whom was Otho I. and Frederic Barbarossa, would have forced the Danish kings to do homage. I have explained in my history what right they had to require this, and to that I refer the reader. The regal authority in this period was considerably weakened, by the growing greatness of the prelates, and the daily increase of the nobility, who first began to distinguish themselves under Waldemar I. Then public assemblies were settled, and a senate of the kingdom appointed, whose assent should be necessary in affairs of greater moment. The chief offices in the kingdom owe their origin to this period, the
fewer

sewer, mareschal, chancellor, &c. But in common law all was uncertain and obscure before the constitution of Calmar, in which the rights of individuals were first described. The state of literature was the same here as in the other kingdoms of Europe. But the age of the Waldemars gave us a Saxo-grammaticus, who composed the history of his country with true Roman eloquence*. To these Waldemars the rights and laws of the Danes owe not their improvement but their origin. Formerly the northern churches were subject to the jurisdiction of the archbishops of Bremen, or Hamburg: but in the time of Eric the Good a new archi-episcopal see was erected at Lunden in Schonen, to which all the bishops in the north submitted. At length Sweden and Norway had archbishops of their own: By which appointment, when the archbishops of Lunden found their authority was too much abridged, it was granted to them, by the Roman pontifs as a compensation, to be called primates of Sweden and apostolic legates.

The third period comprehends about one hundred and fifty years from the beginning of the reign of queen Margaret, that is, from the

* See a specimen of the eloquence and veracity of this writer, in the story of Hamlet the Dane, translated from this historian and inserted in Shakespear illustrated, written by the ingenious author of the Female Quixote.

xivth
cent.

year 1387 to the banishment of Christian II.
i. e. to the year 1523.

Sovereigns of all the north united were Margaret, the northern Semiramis, under whose auspices the three northern nations were united, and became one kingdom. For Albert, king of Sweden, being conquered, she convenes the states at Calmar, in the year 1397, when it was decreed, that Denmark, Norway and Sweden should always be governed by one sovereign. By this famous constitution, ratified at Calmar, the possession of the three kingdoms is confirmed to Margaret, and she governed them with great prudence, and died in 1412.

xvth
cent.

Eric IX. of Pomerania, grandson of the sister of Margaret, by a daughter, whom she by the consent of the states of the three kingdoms made a partner in the government. He carried on wars for a long time against the Holsteiners, and the Hans Towns, but for the most part unsuccessfully. The Swedes, not satisfied with his government, rebel, under the command of Engelbrecht. At last, weary of these disturbances, he takes his flight secretly from Denmark into Germany, where he turned pirate, and exercised it for many years. The Danes therefore throw off their allegiance to him, the kingdom being transferred to Christopher, duke of Bavaria. Under the reign of Margaret and Eric, the pirates,

rates, called Vitalians*, infested the whole Baltic-sea, nor was their strength nor barbarity less than that of the Askomans had formerly been, who cruelly disturbed the northern nations about the time when christianity was first planted.

xvth
cent.

Christopher III. of Bavaria, successor to Eric, the Pomeranian, who reigned till the year 1448. In the time of Christopher, Copenhagen became the residence of the king.

Christian I. Christopher being dead, Christian, count of Oldenburg is proclaimed king by the Danes and Norwegians. But the Swedes chuse another king for themselves, Charles the son of Canute. Hence a war broke out between the two kings, in which Charles having, by his haughtiness and despotism, incensed the nobility of Sweden, and particularly the clergy, he is, by John, archbishop of Upsal, forced to fly to Prussia. Soon after his departure Christian is inaugurated king, in 1457. But Charles after some years returning, war was renewed, and when Christian would have reduced the Swedes, who were in rebellion, by sending an army against them, being vanquished near Stockholm, he departs without doing any thing. And yet, notwithstanding these commotions, Denmark thrived greatly under this king. For Adolphus, duke

* Or *Vitalians*, inhabitants of Germany upon the coasts of the Baltic.

xvth
cent.

of Sleswick, and count of Holstein, dying in 1459, all the demains of the deceased are bestowed on Christian I. and soon after the emperor Frederic III. puts him into the possession of Ditmarsh to hold it in trust. The king going to Rome receives from pope Sixtus IV. power to erect an university at Copenhagen. And this royal university is founded in the year 1478. This most worthy and renowned king died in 1481.

John is substituted in the room of his father by the Danes and Norwegians. He tried for a long while amicably to induce the Swedes to renew the union that had been made at Calmar, but to no purpose, as Steno Stur viceroy of Sweden fomented discords between the kingdoms. Hence they have recourse to arms. The king, having got together a great army, entered Sweden, and having conquered the Dalekarlians, possessed himself of the whole kingdom, in the year 1497. Thus increased in strength and glory, John attempts to subdue the Ditmarshians, but losing many of his men in Ditmarsh, he is forced to desist from the undertaking. News of this slaughter being carried into Sweden, the inhabitants there at length rise against the king, and John was not able to reduce them to order, being at the same time engaged in a war with the Lubeckers. He died in the year 1513.

xvith
cent.

Christian II. for prosperous and adverse turns of fortune more famed than any
of

of the kings of Denmark. Sweden being employed in arms, he attempts at one stroke to cut afunder the sinews of rebellion, and to that purpose having made his entrance into Stockholm, on a signal given by found of trumpet, the Swedish nobility are seized and put to death in the year 1520. But this violent remedy was the cause of perpetual discord between the two nations. For the Swedes taking up arms, under the auspices of Gustavus Ericson, drove the Danes to a man out of Sweden. The government of Christian II. was hateful to the Danish nobility, on account of the pride and weakness of Sigbrite (this woman of Amsterdam was the mother of Dubeck the king's mistress) who could turn the king as she pleased by a nod, and endeavoured to lessen the power of the nobility of Denmark. The Jutlanders shake off their allegiance in the year 1523: and when he found that he could not get much assistance from the boors, whom he had attached to him, by taking away their vassalage, he fled with his wife and children into Holland. At last, being taken in Norway, he is first carried to Sunderburg, and afterwards to Callundburg. He died in that confinement a very old man in 1559.

By the union of the three kingdoms the power of the northern kings seemed to increase to such a degree, as if in time it would become formidable and threaten the neigh-

xvith
cent.

neighbouring parts of Europe. But it was greater in appearance than in reality, on account of the internal disorders under which it laboured, and of the perpetual jars between Sweden and Denmark. Previous to the constitution of Calmar, all matters of common right or public jurisdiction were undetermined and uncertain; so that it can hardly be known from history what was the real power of the crown, or rights and privileges of the states; nay, it cannot so much as be proved, whether Denmark was an elective or hereditary kingdom. Every now and then articles of agreement were entered into, but they were strained or remitted as the exigency of affairs seemed to require. But this constitution settled the form of government, and declared the rights of both the king and the states, so that the public jurisdiction, or law of Denmark, flows from thence as from its true source. As to ecclesiastical affairs, they were in the same condition as in other kingdoms before the Reformation. The same men that were bishops were often chancellors, ambassadors, and generals: priests and deacons followed the camp in armour. And in the time of king Nicholas, five bishops and sixty priests were found amongst those that were slain. The election to ecclesiastical offices was formerly in the people, but then that choice was confirmed by the king. James Erlandi was the first who was made bishop of Lunden by the pope.
From

From that time they suffered themselves to be called bishops of the apostolic see. So great was the wealth of these ecclesiastics, that the bishop of Roschild alone had 45 feudal estates in his possession; and when they went to the public assembly of the states, they were attended by more than an hundred men in arms. Such amazing darkness and ignorance of letters prevailed over all Europe, but particularly over the North! No heresy, therefore, could start up in these times. Theology was then almost reduced to this single article, that what had been once given to the clergy never could be taken away again. *Item*, that tithes were duly to be paid: they who believed or acted contrary to this were deemed the only heretics, and, by virtue of the constitution with the Dacian church, were struck with thunder from the Vatican.

The fourth period.

It begins from 1523, that is, from the banishment of Christian the Second, or commencement of the reformation in Denmark, and extends to 1660, that is, to the alteration in the form of government under Frederic the Third.

In this interval of time reigned Frederic the First, duke of Holstein, who obtained the crown upon the banishment of Christian the Second. In his reign the free exercise of religion was permitted to those who professed the Evangelic or Lutheran religion; and

xvith
cent.

xvith
cent.

and the power of the Danish nobility was raised to its utmost height. He died in 1533.

Christian III. He was much molested by the people of Lubec, who endeavoured to restore the captive king Christian the Second to the crown. This war was carried on under the command of Christopher of Oldenburg. Hence the proverb, *in comitis tempora incidere*, to fall into the count's times, when we forbode approaching calamities. But Christian III. proved victorious at last, and having compelled the principal cities, Copenhagen and Malmogia *, to surrender, he restored peace and tranquility to the kingdom. This war being ended he established by public authority the service of the Lutheran religion, and restored and enlarged the ruined university of Copenhagen. This best of kings, and true father of his country, died in the year 1559.

Frederic II. who, in revenge of the slaughter and disgrace that had happened in the time of king John in Ditmarsh, began his reign with making war against the Ditmarshians, and in a little time subdued that warlike nation. Soon after this a new war broke out with the Swedes, which lasted seven years, viz. from the year 1563 to the year 1570, in which year peace is made between the two kingdoms, at Stetin, which

* Malmos in Schonen.

TO UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

301

was not less advantageous than honourable and glorious to the Danish name. Frederic the Second died in the year 1588. xvith
cent.

Christian IV. son and successor of Frederic. His reign was peaceable till 1611, when he began to make war against Charles king of Sweden. In this war, Calmar, Elfsburg, and other places are taken by the Danes, which, however, were restored for a large sum of money to Gustavus Adolphus in the year 1613. This Swedish war was followed by a German war in 1623, when the protestant princes, finding themselves oppressed by the emperor, created Christian the Fourth general or chieftain † of the circle of xvith
cent.

† The emperor Maximilian I. in the year 1512, divided the German empire into ten circles, viz.

1. The Austrian circle.
2. The Burgundian.
3. The circle of the Lower Rhine, or the electoral circle.
4. The Bavarian.
5. The circle of Upper Saxony.
6. The Franconian.
7. The Suavian.
8. The circle of the Upper Rhine.
9. The Westphalian.
10. The circle of the Lower Saxony.

Every circle hath one or two directors, ecclesiastical and temporal.

1. The director of the Austrian circle is always an arch-duke of Austria.

2. The Burgundian circle consisted formerly of the Franche Comté, and of all the seventeen provinces of the Nether-

xviiith
cent.

of Lower Saxony. But receiving a great overthrow at Konigs-luther he made peace with the emperor at Lubec in 1629, by which

Netherlands; but, these belonging no more to the empire, the Burgundian circle is extinct.

3. The director of the circle of the Lower Rhine, or the electoral circle, is the elector of Mayence.

4. The directors of the Bavarian circle are the elector of Bavaria and the archbishop of Saltzburg.

5. The director of the circle of Upper Saxony is the elector of Saxony.

6. The directors of the Franconian circle are the bishop of Bamberg, and the Margraf of Bareith.

7. The directors of the Suavian circle are the bishop of Constance and the duke of Wirtemberg.

8. The directors of the circle of the Upper Rhine are the bishop of Worms and elector Palatine.

9. The directors of the Westphalian circle are the bishop of Munster, and the electors of Brandenburg and Palatine alternatively.

10. The directors of the circle of Lower Saxony are the duke of Magdeburgh, and the duke of Bremen; and the house of Brunswick officiates as co-director.

These directors have the authority to call the states of their respective circles together on any emergency, and preside in their assemblies,

And they nominate a general, or chieftain of the circle (*ducem circuli*) whose office is:

First, To observe, if there are any military preparations, or plots laid in the circle. And,

Secondly, To convene his deputies in a proper place. And,

Thirdly, To consult with them, what the states are to contribute against any such doings.

Fourthly, To deliver the circle from all imminent dangers. And,

Fifthly, To execute the Imperial bann against any one that troubles the public peace.

Every

which all that had been taken was restored. Now advanced in years he engages in a third war with the Swedes, who having a long time wandered over Germany, in the year 1643 made a sudden irruption into Holstein. This was a mournful war to the Danes, and indeed, if the resolution of the king, who was too brave to be intimidated, had not kept back every thing that was running into ruin, it was very near being fatal. Peace is at last concluded at Broemsebroo *, in the year 1645, when it was stipulated, that Gothland should be given in security for thirty years. After a reign of sixty years died this excellent king, in the year 1648, who, though he was unsuccessful in war, deserves to be reckoned amongst the greatest kings of Denmark for the extraordinary endowments of his mind †.

Every one of such generals, or chieftains, hath his deputies, whereof one is called his substitute, who is to take care of the affairs when the chief is sick or absent.

There are in every circle five or eight deputies, whose business it is to maintain the public peace.

* A town of Ostrogothia in Sweden.

† Lord Molesworth observes in his account of Denmark, that all the good publick buildings in Copenhagen were built by this king, who did more with less revenues than all the succeeding princes, and at a time when the monarchy was neither hereditary nor absolute. He used to say, the purses of his subjects would be always open for his and the kingdoms just occasions; and he had rather they were his cash-keepers than a high treasurer who might abuse him.

In

AN INTRODUCTION

In this period the evangelic religion was established with such care, and so confirmed by many salutary laws under these kings, that no heresy, no disturbances in religion have arisen to this day. The university at Copenhagen, restored by Christian III. enriched and greatly augmented by his successors, for reputation and the raising up of famous men, grew so great as to become an object of envy.

The kings who reigned in the last period were,

xviiith
cent.

Frederic III. who, in the year 1657, made war upon Charles Gustavus king of Sweden. Nothing could be more unfortunate to Denmark. For the Swedes, having possessed themselves of the whole kingdom, invested Copenhagen and besieged it. Peace at length is concluded at Copenhagen, by which Schonen, Halland, Bleking, Bahusium, Bornholm, were given up to the Swedes. This war being ended, which was very near proving fatal to the kingdom, hereditary right with absolute power was annexed to the crown, so that all was made to depend upon the will of the sovereign alone *. He died in the year 1670.

Christian

* The northern nations have ever been held lovers of Liberty, and Europe in general has been more obliged to the Goths, who have been strangely misrepresented as Barbarians, for a free form of government, than to the Romans, who put the provinces they subdued under the power

TO UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

305

xviiith
cent.

Christian V. who in the beginning of his reign added both the counties of Oldenburg and Delmenhorst to his dominions, Antony Gunther, count of Oldenburg, having died in the year 1667. Some time after, having entered into an alliance with the emperor and the Dutch, and their allies, he made war against the Swedes. This war lasted from the year 1675, to the year 1679

power of the rod and the ax. The Danes preserved their liberty till the year 1660, and had till then chosen their kings, preferring the eldest son of the last king, if he was brave and just, and good and gracious. In their government the nobles bore the greatest sway, and when on account of the late wars, large sums of money were to be raised from the people, to pay the army, the nobles refused to bear any share of the expence, insisting it was the privilege of the nobles never to be taxed, tho' they had the wealth of the nation in their own hands; the commons, who were poor, greatly exasperated against them, preferred the tyranny of one to that of many, and made a formal surrender of their liberties to the king, declaring the crown to be absolute and hereditary in his family. The nobles would have prevented this if possible. They did not imagine the people would have carried their resentment so far; nor would they, perhaps, if left to themselves; but they were directed by their bishop, and the president of their assembly, both of whom were afterwards largely recompensed for this service by the king. The nobles were frightened into a compliance: the gates were shut, so that none could depart the city, the soldiers were ready to mutiny for want of their pay, and the people loud in their clamours against the nobility. Under these circumstances the nobles concur with the commons; and it is remarkable, that there was but one man among them who had spirit enough to say, he hoped the Danes would not be treated like slaves in Turkey.

AN INTRODUCTION

in which year peace was concluded at Lunden in Schonen, by which all that had been taken from the Swedes was restored to them again. For so successful were the Danish arms, that the Danes, having seized all the well fortified towns, could easily have driven the Swedes out of all Germany, and had in several sea engagements so reduced their Maritime force, that they had but very few ships left out of a very large fleet. This war being ended, Christian V. reigned till the year 1699, and then died.

Frederic IV. The disputes that had arisen towards the end of the reign of his father with the duke of Holstein in the year 1700, broke out into an open war, so that affairs were in great disorder when Frederic IV. came to the helm. The royal city was besieged by three most powerful enemies at one time, who had taken the part of the duke of Holstein. However, he appeased these storms and in the same year blessed his subjects with an unexpected peace. This war ended, he applied himself altogether to the healing of the nation's wounds, and established the militia. In the year 1709, he proclaimed war against Sweden, which was carried on with various success till the year 1720, when the peace of Fredensburg was concluded, much to the honour of the Danish name. This king died in 1730.

 xviii
cent.

Christian

* Christian VI. the Solomon of the north, an extraordinary example of piety: he reigned in perpetual peace. He adorned the metropolis with a very magnificent palace †, and enriched both kingdoms by the improvement of commerce and of useful arts. This most pious king died in 1746.

xviiith
cent.

Frederic V. a wise and happy king, the father of his country, the love and joy of all about him, who now, in the beginning

* The northern princes seldom lose any opportunity of aggrandizing themselves at the expence of their neighbours. Denmark, in concert with Muscovy and Saxony, had fallen upon Sweden and Holstein Gottorp, in the year 1700, under the frivolous pretence, that the duke of Holstein had raised certain works which might incommode the Danish frontier; but in reality to swallow up that duchy, and not unlikely, Hamburg afterwards. This was a violation of the treaty of Altena, which had been guarantied by England and Holland: those powers, therefore, not content with good offices only, sent no less than thirty men of war to the assistance of the duke of Holstein; and that the ceremonial might not obstruct so vigorous a measure, Sir George Rooke, who commanded this squadron, accepted a commission from the duke of Holstein (by order no doubt) and in the capacity of his auxiliary, yielding up the post of honor to the Swedish admiral, on joining the Swedish fleet. After which junction having covered the king of Sweden's descent into Zealand, and assisted in laying siege to Copenhagen, the Danish court thought it high time to submit to a pacification in favour of the duke of Holstein, which was obtained by the treaty of Traventhal, under the mediation of England, France, Holland and Brandenburg.

† Till then the king's house of residence was, for situation, meanness and inconvenience, the worst in the world: Singular for badness, says my lord Moleworth.

AN INTRODUCTION

of his reign, has accomplished the greatest works upon the best foundations.

Concerning the present state of Denmark, we may remark, that before the last war with Sweden, Denmark continually dreaded the growing power of the Swedes. But that war being happily terminated, and Sweden restrained within her ancient limits, that dread, which had kept Denmark under guard, and in perpetual alarm, is at an end. Add to this, that by the last peace the seeds of discord with the Holsteiners are taken away. The Swedes, who had the privilege of passing the Oresound without paying toll or duty*, an im-

* This strait or passage, called the Sound and Oresound, lies between Zealand and Schonen, and thro' this, generally speaking, all ships pass to and from the Baltic, tho' there are two other passages, called the Lesser and Greater Belts. At first a small tax was laid upon every ship, by consent of the traders sailing into the Baltic, to maintain lights upon the coast in dark and stormy winter nights. But in time the Danes grew more arbitrary, and levied what they pleased from ships in the Baltic, which occasioned many disputes and many treaties. Charles the Vth agreed for his subjects of the Low Countries that they should pay two rose nobles for every ship of 200 tons and under, and three for every ship above 200 tons. About the time the United Provinces shook off the Spanish yoke, the Danes made an extravagant demand upon every one of their ships coming in or going out of the Baltic: and whenever the Dutch were distressed, this toll became exorbitant. In 1643, the Hollanders enter into an alliance with the Swedes and invade Denmark: and the loss of so many territories to the Swedes is ascribed to the raising of the Danish customs. See Moleſworth's history of Denmark.

munity

munity which had been the cause of perpetual complaint, are deprived of that privilege, and the entire Duchy of Sleswick is annexed to the kingdom of Denmark, the separation of which had been constant fuel for dissensions. As to the nature of the soil, Denmark is exceedingly fertile in the production of corn, and abounds with cattle. Norway indeed is barren, and for the most part uncultivated, but then there is a great growth of such merchandize as is proper for exportation. Amongst these are principally enumerated fish, timber, whale-blubber, pitch and such like. Norway is also rich in mines of silver, copper and iron. There are therefore more marts in Norway than in Denmark. The regal power is not restrained by any human laws.

O F S W E D E N.

Sweden is divided into three periods, the 1st containing the Pagan kings, the 2d, Christian kings before the Reformation, the third, kings of the Lutheran religion.

All that the writers of the Swedish affairs relate of the origin of the kingdom of Sweden, and its first kings, is dark and uncertain. Johannes Magnus, in framing his catalogue of kings, seems particularly to have imitated Saxo-Grammaticus, and to have forged as many and more kings, that Sweden might not appear to

AN INTRODUCTION

be of less antiquity than Denmark, as Torseus has shewn in his series of the kings and governors of Denmark. I shall therefore pass over this race of fictitious kings, who reigned nowhere but in the brain of Johannes Magnus, or perhaps in poetry, or such like fabulous relations.

The second period begins about the year 853, namely, from the reign of the first christian king, called Olaus, and reaches as far as to the year 1528, in which year the Roman rites of religion being abolished, the evangelic religion was first established by Gustavus the 1st.

 ixth cent.

The most celebrated kings in this period were,

 xth cent.

Olaus, who being converted to the Christian faith by Ansgarius, was, by the inhabitants of Birca, the place of the king's residence, sacrificed to the idol of Upsal.

 xiiith cent.

Olaus, surnamed Skottkonung, for having granted an annual tribute to the pope, called *Romskott* *.

Eric the Saint, who compelled the Finlanders to receive the Christian faith, and ordered the ancient laws and constitutions of the kingdom to be collected into one volume, under the title of king Eric's law.

* Skott and Lot are Swedish words, signifying tax, and therefore Scott konung is king tax, and Romskott a tax for Rome.

Walde-

Waldemar, who laid the first foundations of the city and castle of Stockholm. He was long disturbed by intestine jars, and at last abdicated the kingdom.

 xiiith
cent.

Magnus Ladelaas, who resumed the title of king of the Swedes and Goths, after that title had been laid aside ever since the time of Olaus Skottkonnung, but thus revived, it has ever since been made use of by the kings of Sweden to this day. He died in the year 1290.

Birger II. Sweden was in his time disturbed by perpetual tumults, on account of dissensions raised between the king and his younger brothers. At last, under the pretence of being reconciled to them, he invites his brothers, and taking that opportunity to seize their persons, he loads them with iron chains, and confines them in a tower, where they were both miserably starved to death. But this perfidy alienated the minds of all men from the king, and excited such commotion, that he was forced to fly out of the kingdom.

 xivth
cent.

Magnus, surnamed Smeck. In his reign the people of Schonen, to free themselves from the oppression of the Holsteiners, submitted to the Swedes. But not long after this, the king, being distressed by a faction of his nobles, enters into a secret treaty with Waldemar the III^d. king of Denmark, and restores Schonen to the Danes. This increasing the

AN INTRODUCTION

hatred of the nobles against the king, they have recourse to foreign aids, and choose Albert duke of Mecklenberg to be their sovereign.

Albert. He defeated Magnus near Encopia in 1365, and took him alive, and kept him long in bonds, but Magnus at length obtaining his freedom, was not long after drowned in his passage to Norway; and within a little time Albert had the like misfortune to be conquered by Margaret queen of Denmark, and to be kept seven entire years in custody. But the queen * calling an assembly of the states of the three northern kingdoms, by the union of Calmar, joined together as one body Denmark, Norway and Sweden. A. C. 1397. This union † of the three kingdoms, though often disturbed, lasted to the year 1523, viz. 'till the banishment of Christian the II^d.

 xvith
cent.

The kings of the last period were, Gustavus, who having driven the Danes out of Sweden, and received the surrender of Stockholm, as the avenger and promoter of the liberty of Sweden, is declared their king: After he had settled the affairs of the kingdom, he utterly abolished the Romish religion, and

* She is reported to have said to her successor, Sweden shall feed you, Norway clothe you, and Denmark defend you.

† It was much more in favour of the Danes than the Swedes.

by

TO UNIVERSAL HISTORY:

313

xvith
cent.

by law established the evangelic, or lutheran, in 1528. From that time the reformed religion, according to the Augsburg confession, has alone prevailed in Sweden to this day. After some years, the assembly of the states being held, the kingdom of Sweden is declared hereditary in the family of Gustavus *. This most renowned king died in the year 1560.

Eric XIV. †, heir to his father's kingdom, not his virtues, for his was a reign

* He left four sons : Eric, his successor in the kingdom : John was made duke of Finland ; Magnus duke of Ostrogothia ; Charles duke of Sudermanland. But this dismembring of provinces from the crown of Sweden was a great political error.

† There were nine kings of Denmark and fourteen of Sweden of the name of Eric. One of them, called Eric of Pomerania, king of Sweden, married Philippa, daughter of Henry the IVth king of England. She is said to have undertaken the defence of the royal city of Copenhagen, and obliged the enemy to raise the siege, whilst her husband in despair retired to a monastery. But having afterwards fitted out a fleet which was unsuccessful, the king in a rage beat her so as, she being with child, caused a miscarriage ; upon which she went into a monastery, and soon after died. Eric the XIVth was one of those who before he succeeded to the kingdom of Sweden had entertained some hopes of marrying Elizabeth queen of England. He reigned nine years, in which he did many dishonourable actions ; among others he married the daughter of a peasant who had been his mistress, and having thereby lost the affections of his people, was easily deposed by his brother John, whom he had confined for the five first years of his reign, on suspicion of his having a design to supplant him.

of

AN INTRODUCTION

of folly and cruelty. He carried on an unsuccessful war against Frederic the II^d. king of Denmark. But before that was at an end, a greater storm bursts out in his own dominions, by the insurrection of his brother John against him, whom Eric had long kept prisoner. At length he is deprived both of his realm and life by this John.

John III. having taken his brother began to reign in * 1568. By the persuasion of his queen he laboured to restore popery in Sweden. But when he found it was not to be done openly and by violence, he had recourse to other means. For this purpose he contrived a liturgy, which he endeavoured to impose upon the Swedes, under the specious title of the liturgy of the church of Sweden. But when the clergy considered that a window was opened by this liturgy for the admission of popery, they opposed it with all their might; and at last, the queen who had been the torch and trumpet of these disturbances being dead, the king desisted from pursuing the design. John died in 1592.

Sigismund. After the death of king John, Sigismund his son, king of Poland, is called

* After ten years confinement of his brother Eric, he is said to have poisoned him in prison and to have taken the kingdom from Eric's son, to whom the states had engaged their allegiance; though born before the king was married to his mother.

upon

TO UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

315

xvith
cent.

upon to take his father's crown. But having been brought up from his infancy in the Romish superstition, he set about the propagating it in Sweden with more violence than his father had done before him. A civil war breaks out, in which Charles, brother of the late king John, and head of the opposite faction, is victorious, and Sigismund being defeated in the great battle of Strangebro, is forced to fly into Poland.

Charles IX. who, upon the return of Sigismund into Poland, began his reign in the year 1605 *. He waged war unsuccessfully with Christian the IVth. king of Denmark, and died in that very war, in 1611.

xvith
cent.

Gustavus Adolphus, who, making peace with the Danes, turned his arms against the Poles. But in 1629, he makes a truce with them, and the next year undertakes an expedition into Germany, where the conqueror like a torrent deluges the whole empire. After many signal victories, and many public instances of surprizing fortitude, he † falls

* Sigismund was deposed, and the administration of the realm was committed to duke Charles in 1599; and this prince was declared king in 1604 according to Pufendorf.

† He was not 38 years of age when he died, and yet for war, or policy, or justice, or learning, or piety, few, if any kings, have ever been equal to him.

at

AN INTRODUCTION

at last in the battle of Lutzen in the year 1632.

Christina succeeded her father before she was quite six years of age. In her reign the war begun against the emperor is carried on till the year 1648, when the treaty of Westphalia was concluded, by which the bishopric of Bremen and Verden, Upper Pomerania, the island of Rugen and the town of Wismar, are given to the Swedes. The power of the Swedes thus remarkably increased, the queen *, grown weary of governing, abdicates the crown in favour of her cousin Charles, in 1654.

Charles Gustavus, who, in the beginning of his reign, made war with the Poles; then passing the little belt upon the ice into Denmark, he reduced that kingdom to the greatest distress. The war indeed ended with the peace of Roschild, but so infirm a peace was soon broke, and the royal city of Copenhagen oppressed by a siege. During this war Charles Gustavus dies in 1660.

Charles XI. who, having entered into a treaty with the French, sent his army into Germany. But the Swedish forces being

* See memoirs of this queen by Monsieur Arkenholt of Hesse-cassel, which produced some remarks from baron Holberg, and a very spirited reply from the author of the memoirs.

overthrown in a great battle, the elector of Brandenburg, with the Danes, and other allies, drive the Swedes entirely out of Germany. On the other hand, the Danes possessed most of the towns in Schonen, and greatly weakened the naval force of the Swedes. But by the assistance of the French, all was restored to the Swedes again. Charles died in 1697.

Charles XII. a true son of Mars. Of his feats in Denmark, Moscovy, Poland and Germany, there is no occasion to write, as they are well known to every one *. After the unfortunate battle at Pultawa he went into Turkey, where he staid some years, and returning home made an expedition into Norway. But at the siege of Fredericks-hall, he was shot with a musquet ball and died, in the year 1718.

 xviiith
cent.

Ulrica Eleonora. After the death of Charles, a dispute arises between the late king's sister, Ulrica Eleonora, and the duke of Holstein, son of another sister: But an assembly of the nation being held, the crown is bestowed on Ulrica Eleonora, upon condition that she should not exercise arbitrary power. Thus the form of government was entirely changed in Sweden. At last, with the consent of the states, Ulrica Eleonora surrendered the regal

* See his life, written by Monsieur Voltaire.

govern-

government to her husband Frederic, prince, and since landgrave of Hesse, who was proclaimed king of Sweden in the year 1720. Adolphus Frederic, bishop of Lubec, descended from the family of the dukes of Holstein, was appointed to succeed him. Frederic died in 1751.

Adolphus Frederic now reigns.

The present state of Sweden is very different from what it formerly was when they placed all their boast in arms alone; but being since taught by experience, that nothing but envy and vain glory, which is soon lost by the mutability of fortune, was to be got by the sword, applied themselves seriously to the cultivation of the arts of peace, and had not been of old more busy in extending the limits of their kingdom, than they now are in promoting arts, learning, commerce*, and in finding out the means whereby poverty may be subdued, and disorders healed, which had hitherto been the concomitants of wars and conquests. Thus their minds

* The Swedes have long been a commercial people, tho' their strength by sea has not been equal to their forces at land. Necessity introduced commerce among them; they were in want of salt, sugar, spices, wines, linen, cloth, &c. and other nations had occasion for their masts, deal, iron, copper, pitch, &c. They derived great advantage from the settling of the Walloons among them, and from many industrious mechanicks driven thither by the cruelty of the duke d' Alba.

being

being changed, and the seeds of discord removed, which had so often disturbed the peace of the northern kingdoms, the time seems to be come, in which it may be proper to think of joining the Danes and Swedes, in firm and solid friendship, that they may with better security encourage and promote navigation, manufactures and other profitable arts, which some would stifle in the very birth. The present form of government in Sweden is indeed monarchical, but a very limited one, for the majesty of the kingdom resides in the national assembly, which consists of the four † states of the kingdom.

† The representatives of the nobility, clergy, burghers and peasants.

OF MOSCOVY.

The Russian history may be divided into three epochs, as the history thereof appears in three different states. 1. What it was before John, son of Basil. 2. From the time of John the Blind to Peter Alexiowitz; and lastly, from his time to our own.

It appears that Moscovy was divided into various principalities before the time of John the son of Basil and that this vast empire was often in subjection to the Tartars. The Russians embraced the christian faith according to the rites of the Greek church under prince Voladamir, who espoused Anna (others say Helena) daughter of the emperor of the Greeks, in the year 1237.

xvth cent.

Moscovy began to lift up its head under John, son of Basil, who was blind, having shook off the yoke of the Tartars, and reduced to order those princes who played the tyrants every where in Russia. Of all these princes the most powerful was the duke of Great Novogorod; for upon the taking of this most opulent city, they could not well transport the riches of it in three hundred carriages. Hence the proverb, "who shall dare to attempt any thing against God and
" the

"the great Novogorod *?" After John the founder of the Russian empire, reigned the following princes.

Basil V. or Ivanowitz.

John Basilowitz II. a horrid tyrant, who added two kingdoms of Tartary to the Russian empire, viz. Casan and Astracan.

Feodor Ivanowitz.

Boris Gudenow †.

xvith
cent.

Basil

* From its situation a place of great trade, consequently of great wealth. It stands in a large plain upon the river Volga, which issues out of the lake Ilmen, within a mile of the city, and is navigable to the Caspian Sea. John Basilowitz the Second, that is, John, the son of Basil, in 1569, slew and drowned 2770 of the inhabitants of this city, on a suspicion, which was groundless, of their intending to revolt.

† Boris was regent during the reign of Feodor, i. e. Theodore, and is said to have ordered the murder of Demetrius, son of John Basilowitz, a young prince nine months old, and brother to Feodor, and then to have killed the murderers. After this, it is said, he poisoned Feodor, and placed himself upon his throne. But Griska, a young monk, pretending to be Demetrius, asserting, that another had been killed in his room, by Boris, appeared in arms, and was at length put in possession of the kingdom. This Demetrius being murdered in an insurrection, Basil Zussy, in 1606, succeeded him, but was in a few years defeated and dethroned by another Demetrius, and put into prison, where he died. Two years after this, the Moscovites chose Michael, son of their patriarch, for their sovereign. He recovered Moscow from the Polanders, and was a good prince. He died in 1645, and was succeeded by his son Alexius Michaelowitz, whom some condemn for his cruelties, and others commend

Y

for

 xviiith
cent.

Basil Zufky.

Michael Foederowitz.

Alexius Michaelowitz.

Foedor Alexiowitz. After whose decease there is a contest for the empire between his brothers Ivan and Peter; for when Ivan, though the eldest, was judged to be unfit to govern, the Supremacy was conferred on Peter. But Sophia, the sister, a princess of a high mind, greatly displeased at the exclusion of Ivan, under whose name she hoped to govern, draws off to her interest some of the nobles with the soldiers, by whose means it is brought to pass, that both the brothers should rule together with equal authority. And this junction lasted till the year 1688, when, upon the discovery of some new machinations against Peter, Sophia is sent to a monastery. After this Ivan of his own accord surrendered up his share in the government.

Although Russia from the time of John Basil was of such weight on account of the greatness of the empire, as to terrify its neighbours, yet little notice was taken of that vast kingdom before Peter Alexiowitz, because of the rude manners of the Russians, and their ignorance of arts, and particularly of the military: besides, Moscow was exposed to for his prudence. He sent an embassy to England, and died in 1676.

frequent

frequent intestine broils and commotions, and it was difficult to keep the royal guard, called the Strelitzes in their obedience. But under Peter Alexiowitz the whole face of things was changed.

The princes of the last period were,

Peter Alexiowitz the Great, under whose wife government Moscovy was raised to the highest pitch of strength and glory. This prince was great in war, but greater in peace. For together with military discipline he brought into Russia arts and learning, which was indeed a stupendous work, and what had till that time been despaired of; for no enterprize can be more arduous than to reform and polish a rude people, extremely fond of their old superstitions. He therefore well deserves to be called the founder of the Russian nation. He died in 1725.

xviiith
cent.

Catherine his widow, a princess endowed with a noble spirit and admirable parts, followed the steps of the late excellent emperor, so that the laws and institutes of the great founder remain safe and unshaken to this day. After her reigned Peter the Second, a grandson by his son Alexius.

Anna Iwanowna, daughter of the brother of Peter the Great, formerly duchess of Courland, who made war against the Ottoman port, and governed with prudence.

 xviiith
cent.

John, a prince of Brunswic-Lunenburgh, a nephew's son of Anna, by her sister Catherine Iwanowna, who had been married to the duke of Mecklenburgh. The imperial diadem is conferred upon him, an infant one year old, by the last will of the former empress, who died in 1740. The care of the emperor during his minority was committed to Biron, duke of Courland.

Elizabeth, daughter of Peter the Great, the present empress, who committing John and his mother Anna, named so after her aunt, on the mother's side, otherwise Elizabetha-Catherina-Christina, into custody, took possession of the Russian empire, in 1741, and destined Charles Peter Ulric, her nephew by a sister, duke of Holstein Gottorp, to succeed her.

OF POLAND.

Poland may be divided, into two periods, the first comprehending its ancient state under dukes, the second under kings.

 vith cent.

Formerly Poland was called Sarmatia. The first prince of Poland of whom any mention is made in history, is Lech-us*, whence some think the name of Po-lacks should be de-

* He came from the Cimmerian Bosphorus, and subdued this country in the year 550.

rived,

rived *, meaning the posterity of Lechus. When the family of Lechus was extinct, Poland was governed by twelve Palatins or Woywods. But dissensions arising amongst them, the chief command is given to Cracus, founder of the city of Cracow. After Cracus reigned Lechus II. Venda. Lescus I. Lescus II.

viiith
cent.

Lescus III. Popielus I. Popielus II. Piaſtus, a boor of Croſne, from whom the Poles call their kings that are natives of Poland Piaſti.

ixth cent.

Ziemovitus. Lescus IV. Ziemoniſlus. Miecilaus, the first christian prince “ that establishes christianity in Poland, A. 965.”

xth cent.

The principal kings of Poland were, Boleslaus Chrobrius, who was dignified with the royal title by the emperor Otho III. A. C. 999.

Boleslaus the Bold, who slew Stanislaus bishop of Cracow †, with a scimitar at the altar. Under sentence of excommunication for this, it is said he laid violent hands on himself ‡.

xiith
cent.

Lescus, surnamed White, in whose reign the Tartars first began to infect Poland. The knights of the Holy Cross §, driven out of

xiiith
cent.

* Rather from the word *Pola*, which in Sclavonian signifies a *plain*.

† His offence was reproving the king for his excessive cruelty and debauchery.

‡ Others say, he retired to Hungary, and died there.

§ That is of the Teutonic order.

 xiiith
cent.

Syria by the Saracens, are called in to assist against the inroads made by the Prussians. This was afterwards the source of many wars to Poland.

 xivth
cent.

Casimir III. who added Lesser Russia to his dominion. He was the last of the manly race of Piaſtus.

Jagello, or Uladislaus IV. duke of Lithuania, who united Lithuania with the kingdom of Poland. He had severe wars with the knights of the Cross, and died in 1434.

 xvth cent.

Uladislaus V. who fell in the battle against the Turks at Varna, in 1445.

Casimir IV. In his reign the Poles, tired out with the loss of so many lives, made peace with the knights of the cross upon these conditions, that part of Prussia should be given to the knights, and the master of the order be a fefee of the kingdom of Poland, and a prince and senator thereof. Casimir died in the year 1492.

 xvith
cent.

Sigismund I. Under whom the wars with the knights broke out again. At last they agree, on condition that Albert, marquis of Brandenburg, then master of the order should be created duke of Prussia, and hold part of Prussia in feoff. From this time they were marquises and electors of Brandenburg, and afterwards kings of Prussia. Sigismund died in 1548.

Sigismund Augustus *. Under this king, the Livonians being oppressed by the Moscovites, surrender up themselves to the Poles. The knights of the Teutonic order had to this time been in possession of Livonia; but upon this surrender Gothard Ketler, last master of that order, having given up the mastership, is created duke of Courland by the Poles. This was the origin of the dukes of Courland. But this alteration was the source of many wars. Sigismund Augustus died in 1572, and in him the royal race of Jagello was extinct.

Henry de Valois is elected king of Poland. He was brother to Charles IX. king of France, who dying without issue, Henry takes his flight secretly from Poland.

Stephen Bathori †, prince of Transylvania, is called to the crown upon the abdication of Henry. He is reckoned one of the best kings of Poland. He was the author of

* Son of Sigismund I. The Polish nobility obtained leave of this king to send their sons to protestant universities, as having more learned professors than the Romanists. This in its consequences introduced the reformation into Poland. The Papists, on the other hand, petitioned the king that no such leave might be granted; but he putting them off from day to day, they called him king *Gioiron*, which in their language signifies king To-morrow.

† This king is reported to have said, that God reserved three things to himself, “ the power of creating, the “ knowledge of things future, and the dominion over the “ consciences of men.”

many salutary laws, and of the horse militia. He stationed in those places that looked towards Tartary a constant body of horse, commonly called *Quartans*, because they were payed out of the quarter or fourth part of the revenue of the country. And now *Ukrania*, which on account of the frequent incursions of the *Tarters* had lain uncultivated, began to be adorned with cities and towns. He also humanized the *Cossacs*, till now a barbarous people, and disciplined their foot-soldiers. This incomparable king died in 1586.

xviii
cent.

Sigismund III *. Son of *John*, king of *Sweden*, who engaged in many dreadful wars with the *Swedes*, *Turks* and *Russians*; and “who having been elected king of *Sweden*, “was deposed for endeavouring to introduce “the popish religion into the country. He died “in 1632.”

Uladislaus VI. In his reign, the *Cossacs*, oppressed by the *Polish* nobility, are made enemies to *Poland*. *Uladislaus* dies in 1647.

John Casimir. Under his government the sedition of the *Cossacs* broke out into open war. Part of them joined the *Russians*, part the *Turks*, and armed both nations against the *Poles*. At last, grown weary not only of continual wars abroad, the severest of which

* Chosen king to the exclusion of *Maximilian*, who had been elected by a party of the nobility.

he experienced against the Swedes, but of intestine commotions at home, he abdicates *
in the year 1664. xviiith
cent.

Michael Viesnowisky, who, after the abdication of John Casimir, was elected Piastus, or native king of Poland. He engaged in an unsuccessful war against the Turks, and was forced to conclude it with an ignominious peace. The conditions of the peace were, that Kaminieck in Podolia should be surrendered to the Turks, and that the Poles should pay them an annual tribute. Michael died in the year 1673.

John III. Sobiesky, who commanded the Polish army, and made a great slaughter † of the Turks at Choczim. For this service done the commonwealth he is chosen king of Poland upon the death of Michael. He concluded a peace with the Turks in 1676, stipulating, that the annual tribute should be no longer paid. In the year 1683, when Vienna was invested and besieged by the Turks, he marched against them, but could not recover Kaminieck. He died in 1696.

* He retired to France, where he was abbot of St. Germain des Prez. He died in 1672, at Nevers. His body was sent to Warsaw, but his heart was deposited in his abby, where the monks have erected a monument to his memory.

† Twenty thousand Spahis and eight thousand Janizaries were slain in this action, in 1673.

Frederic

 xviiith.
cent.

Frederic Augustus, elector of Saxony, who, by the peace of Carlowitz, recovered Kaminieck, with other places of Ukrania and Podolia, which had been seized upon by the Turks. I pass over the war against the Swedes, and the disturbances that broke out in Poland in his reign. After having struggled through innumerable difficulties, he died at Warsaw, in 1733. 'On the death of John 'Sobiesky,' all Europe seemed to be in a flame, and ready to go to war about the succession, there being no less than seven competitors for the kingdom. One of them, Stanislaus Leszinski was, in opposition to Augustus, obtruded by Charles the Twelfth, king of Sweden, upon the throne of Poland, and solemnly invested with the royal dignity, in 1704; from whence he was removed 'soon 'after the defeat of the king of Sweden at 'Pultowa. And upon the death of Augustus, 'Stanislaus,' by the assistance of the French king, his son-in-law, in conjunction with Spain and Savoy, exerted his utmost efforts to be restored again. But these attempts were fruitless, the emperor Charles the Sixth powerfully supporting the late king's son, Frederic Augustus the Second, who at this time governs Poland.

At present the power of the kings of Poland is so hedged in, and circumscribed by the laws, that they have little more than the name of kings;

kings; moreover, the form of government approaches nearer to an Aristocracy than a monarchy. Hence it is that Poland is called both a kingdom and a commonwealth. The states of the kingdom, in whom resides the greatest power, consist of bishops, Palatins, (called Woywods) Castellans, or governors of castles: every one of the Polish nobility has a right to vote in the election of a king. Upon whose death there is an interregnum, during which, the archbishop of Gnesna, as primate of the kingdom, discharges the office of inter-rex, and proclaims the cause of the interregnum by letters, which they usually call *universales*. The laws which they make before the choosing of the king are called *pacta conventa*, compacts. The strength of the kingdom consists chiefly in the nobility: For they reckon they can raise an army of two hundred thousand horse out of their nobility alone. A general muster, when all the inhabitants are to appear under arms, is called *Pospolite Ruszenie*; but such a general muster cannot be made but in case of necessity, nor then without the consent of all the states. Hence it is evident, that the power of Poland is such as may excite the envy of its neighbours, but with difficulty defend itself against them, since there is seldom any harmony between the king and the states. Thus much may be sufficient to have said of those kingdoms,

kingdoms, which rose out of the ruin of the western Roman empire.

After the eastern empire had been miserably torn by the Saracens *, it is at last totally destroyed by the Turks. And since all the provinces of the old eastern empire may now be comprehended under the dominion of the Turks, it is necessary to say something of the rise and progress of the new Ottoman monarchy.

OF THE TURKISH EMPIRE.

In the Turkish history there are two remarkable epochs, the first, including the princes, the second, the Ottoman emperors.

About an hundred years after the death of the false prophet Mohammed, certain Scythian nations, issuing forth through the Caspian Straits, and by mount Caucasus, settled in that tract of Asia, now known by the name of Georgia and Turcomannia. After many long and dreadful wars with the Saracens, they made a peace with them in the eighth century, and embraced the religion of the Saracens, and united with them so as to become one people. In course of time this united empire was divided into several

* See Ockley's History of the Saracens, and Pocock's Specimen Historiæ Arabicæ.

Dynasties, or Khalipates, the chiefs of which were called Khaliphs. Among these Khaliphs there was a very noted one called Ottoman, who subduing the potentates that bordered upon him, laid the foundation of that vast empire of the Turks, which to this day flourishes under the name of the Ottoman Port. The word Port signifies the seat of empire.

The Ottoman princes were,

Ottoman, founder of the Ottoman Port.
A. C. 1298. He having taken Prusia, a city of Bithynia, fixed his seat there.

xiiith
cent.

Orchan, who took possession of Nicæa.

Amurath I. under whose administration the Ottoman affairs were amazingly advanced. He passed into Europe, and taking Adrianople in 1360, fixed his seat there. Amurath the First is believed to have been the first founder of that military school, which consisted of christian captives, whom he took care to have instructed in the military art and discipline. These are called Janizaries, that is to say novices, and they now constitute the strength of the foot. In this institution he followed the Sultans of Ægypt, who of the same sort of christian captives formed their Mammelucs*.

xivth
cent.

Bajazet

* Ægyptian soldiers. The Sultan of Ægypt was usually chosen out of their body. They lasted 267 years till

xvth cent.

Bajazet I. who putting to flight the army of the christians at the city Nicopolis, reduced the eastern empire to such streights, as seemed to threaten destruction to the imperial city of Constantinople, if Tamerlane had not then prevented it, who was a Tartarian prince, that subdued a great part of Asia, and took Bajazet * alive, and made him captive at the battle in Natolia,

Iffem, the son of Bajazet.

Soliman I †.

Musa.

Mahomet I ‡,

Amurath

till 1516, when they and their Sultan were defeated by Selim, emperor of the Turks, and the year following entirely destroyed. Tomumbey was the last of them, and had been chosen Sultan. He had performed many great feats, and made many surprising escapes. At last he hides himself in a fen, but is discovered, dragged thence and hanged.

* Bajazet is said to have been the first who set the example in the Turkish empire of ascending the throne by putting of brothers to death. He deserved the punishment of the cage, but that his conqueror put him in one is mere invention; for, on the contrary, he treated him as his equal. It is an undeserved reproach to this Tartarian prince to call him *lane* (*lenc*) which signifies *lame*: as if he had really been shot with an arrow by a shepherd for stealing his sheep, and had been a robber in his youth, which is false. He was princely in his birth, education and behaviour, and should never be called by any other than his true name, Timur-bec, or Timur the prince.

† He reigned two or three years, and took Adrianople, Gallipoli, and other places.

‡ Brother to Musa, and son of Bajazet. He is commended for his valour, fidelity, and justice. He gained many

Amurath II. who re-established the ruined militia of the Janizaries, and has therefore been esteemed by some the founder of them. He was successful in his wars against the christians, whose strength he reduced by a great defeat near the city Varna, in which fell Uladislaus, king of Poland and Hungary. One of the greatest enemies he had was George Castriot, whom the Turks, on account of his bravery, called Scanderbeg, that is, Alexander the Great. For although he possessed but a small principality in Epirus, he distressed the Turks with infinite slaughter, and is said to have slain two thousand of the enemy with his own hand. Amurath the Second died in the year 1451.

Under the preceding princes the Ottoman power increased to such a degree, that almost all the provinces of the Eastern empire became subject to the dominion of the Turks, so that nothing was left to the Roman emperors but the city of Constantinople. For Ægypt, and a great part of Syria, and Palestine were under their own Sultans or kings of the Mahometan religion. The cause of this amazing progress is to be ascribed no less to the slothfulness and other vices of the Greek emperors than the valour of the Turks, and

many victories; but is reported by some to have obtained the succession by putting his brother Musa to death.

parti-

particularly to the institution of the Janizaries. This militia was first composed of the captive children of christians only, who were with great care instructed both in the military art and in the Mahometan religion. But in after time the native Turks got into this militia.

xvth cent. The Turkish emperors were,

Mahomet II. the Hero, and also the most cruel tyrant * of his age. His mother was a christian, and he was learned in all arts, particularly in astronomy, and well skilled in languages, especially Greek, Latin, Persian, and Arabic. He overthrew two christian empires. For marching with an immense army against Constantinople he took that imperial city in the year 1453, and not long after he reduced the empire † of Trebisonde to obedience, whose last emperor was David. Thus the Roman monarchy was entirely extinguished, and from its ashes arose the new

* Among other barbarities he is said to have ripped open the bellies of fourteen pages to discover which of them had eaten a melon. He treated the body of Constantine, after taking Constantinople, with great indignity; and broke his word shamefully in putting to death the princes of Bosnia and Metelin. Upon his taking Constantinople, he entered the famous church of Sophia, and turned it into a Mosque.

† The name of the capital of an empire of the same name in Asia, established by Alexius Comnenus the younger, when he fled in 1204 from the city of Constantinople.

Turkish

Turkish empire, which now flourishes. Ma- xvth cent.
homet the Second died in the year 1481.

Bajazet II. succeeds his father Mahomet, being preferred by the Janizaries to Zizim, the elder son, who taking it very ill to be excluded, goes off to the christians and embraces their religion. But as he was enforcing his claim to the empire by means of the christians, he died in Italy. Bajazet himself died in 1512.

Selim, who routed the Mammelucs, and added all Ægypt to his dominions. He died in 1520. xvith cent.

Soliman II. * or the magnificent, who for his prudence and great actions is reckoned one of the most famous of the Turkish emperors. He took Belgrade and the island of Rhodes, and having routed the Hungarian forces, and slain their King Lewis, he seized Buda, the metropolis of Hungary. But he was obliged to raise the siege of Vienna. He used to say, that he who would subdue the christian world should begin with the pope. He died almost eighty years old, in 1566.

Selim II. In his reign the island of Cyprus was conquered by the Turks. He died after the memorable victory gained by the christians at Lepanto, in the year 1578.

* Called by some Soliman the Ist. The prince mentioned pag. 334. not having been universally acknowledged.

Amurath III. under whose reign, Tartary was on certain conditions subjected to the Ottoman empire. He died in 1595.

Mahomet III. a lazy, indolent, soft, man*, dies in 1603.

xviii
cent.

Achmet I. He gave the title of Cæsar to the emperor of Germany, which his predecessors had constantly refused. He died in 1617.

Mustapha, a silly man, who being found unequal to the weight of governing, is cast into prison.

Osman, a brave, but unfortunate, prince. He was unsuccessful in Poland, and thinking that the state of the empire was hurt by the excessive power of the Janizaries, and that much blood-shed was to be imputed to their frequent seditions, he resolved to break them, and to remove the seat of empire into Asia. But these guards, having notice of it, strangle him, and taking Mustapha out of prison, restore him to the empire. But such was the folly of Mustapha, that he could by no means support the dignity. The next year therefore they sent him to his prison again.

Amurath VI. succeeds Mustapha. He governed with such severity, that if any

* Though no warrior, a most inhuman murderer. Twenty-one of his brothers were killed, and ten of his father's wives, being with child, were thrown into the sea, that he might succeed to the empire. He sacrificed his best friends to appease the Janizaries, and put to death his eldest son, with the mother of him on suspicion of treason.

thing

thing by chance dropped out of his hands, they that were in waiting would fling themselves out of the window for fear they should be accused of not being quick and diligent, and so incur the emperor's displeasure. He strangled the high priest, whom they call the Musti, a disgrace that had never happened to one of his dignity before. Amurath made war with the Persians from whom he took Bagdat. He submitted to his fate in 1640.

Ibrahim, a prince, the slave of every vice. He is slain by the Janizaries, encouraged by the Musti, whose daughter he had debauched.

Mahomet IV. In the beginning of whose reign there was a great insurrection of the Janizaries which was happily quelled by the Grand Vizir Mahomet Caprogli. Who, when he saw the calamities occasioned by these licentious soldiers, resolved to extirpate them, and having sent the greatest part of them into Candia, they all perished there by famine and the sword. His son and successor Achmet Caprogli followed his steps in weakening the sinews of the Janizaries, by which it happens that the emperors are more secure themselves, but less powerful against the neighbouring princes. For together with their insolence, they lost their strength and fortitude. Mahomet carried on distressful wars against the emperor of Germany, the Poles, the Muscovites and Venetians: he took the

xviiith
cent.

island of Crete, or Candia, from the last. But at length being unsuccessful in war, and a sedition breaking out, he is thrown into prison, in the year 1687.

Soliman III. * prosecuted the war against the Germans and their allies, with greater success than his predecessor †. Therefore, when the war had lasted till the year 1697, Mustapha the Second was forced to purchase a peace at the expence of many provinces.

xviiith
cent.

Achmet III. who, in our own time, went to war with the Muscovites, Venetians, Germans, and Persians. He set up a printing-house, at Constantinople, though the Musti opposed it, urging in vain, that the art of printing was prohibited Mahometans by the law.

Mahomet V: successful in his wars against the christians, unsuccessful in those against the Persians. This is the emperor that now reigns.

The Turkish arms had been always prosperous till the time of Soliman the Second.

* Or second, according to some. See Note † pag. 237.

† Achmet II. succeeded his brother Soliman. Achmet's army met with a great defeat at Salankemen in 1691.

‡ He died, as is said, of a sudden fit of an asthma, the 13th of December; succeeded by his brother, Osman III, who was begirt with the scymitar by the Musti, Dec. 23, 1754.

After

TO UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

341

After his death the course of their victories began to slacken a little. But the Caprogli having laboured to reform the Janizaries, the Ottoman power is so far in decline, that the Turks now tremble at the christian name, which they used formerly to despise. And as in our age the power of the emperors of Germany and Muscovy are remarkably increased, there are who pretend to foretel the fatal period of the Ottoman empire not to be far off.

F I N I S.



After his death the course of their victories began to slacken a little. But the Emperor having laboured to reform the Janissaries, the Ottoman power is still in decline, that the Turks now are no longer in the same manner which they were in the days of the emperors of Germany and Moscow who were remarkably increased, there are who pretend to forecast the fatal period of the Ottoman empire not to be far off.



LIBRARY

UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

As
be
had
O
T
W
as
O
C
th
be